

FUNCTIONS * NOTATION
NOTATION * OPERATIONS
RELATIONS * NOTATION

Mariusz Wodzicki

November 21, 2023

Contents

1	Preliminaries	18
1.1	The language of functions	18
1.1.1	Mathematical structures	18
1.1.2	The concept of a function	18
1.1.3	The domain of a function	18
1.1.4	The antidomain of a function	18
1.1.5	The argument-list and the value of a function	18
1.1.6	The arrow representation of a function	19
1.1.7	Equality of functions	19
1.1.8	Functions of zero variables	19
1.1.9	Functions constant in the i -th variable	19
1.1.10	. . . . .	20
1.1.11	Lists with omitted entries	20
1.1.12	Freezing a variable in a function of n -variables	20
1.1.13	The associated evaluation functions of one variable	20
1.1.14	Adjunction correspondence	21
1.1.15	. . . . .	21
1.1.16	Adjunction correspondence in exponential notation	21
1.1.17	Surjective functions	21
1.1.18	Injective functions	21
1.1.19	Bijjective functions	22
1.2	Composition of functions	22
1.2.1	Postcomposition	22
1.2.2	. . . . .	22
1.2.3	Precomposition	22
1.2.4	. . . . .	22
1.2.5	Invertible functions of a single variable	22
1.2.6	. . . . .	23
1.2.7	Finite sets	23
1.2.8	Infinite sets	23
1.2.9	Axiom of Infinity	23
1.3	The language of relations	24
1.3.1	Statements	24
1.3.2	A relation is a function whose values are statements	24
1.3.3	. . . . .	24
1.3.4	Total relations	24
1.3.5	Void relations	24
1.3.6	Nullary, unary, binary, ternary, ... relations	24
1.3.7	{nullary relations} \longleftrightarrow {statements}	24
1.3.8	. . . . .	24
1.3.9	Relations <i>on</i> a set	24

1.4	Binary relations <i>on</i> a set: a vocabulary of terms	25
1.4.1	. . . . .	25
1.4.2	Infix notation	25
1.4.3	Tilde notation	25
1.4.4	Various types of binary relations on a set	25
1.4.5	. . . . .	26
1.4.6	Preorder relations	26
1.4.7	Equivalence relations	26
1.4.8	Order relations	26
1.4.9	Sharp order relations	26
1.4.10	Ordered sets	26
1.4.11	Comments about terminology and notation	27
1.4.12	Linearly ordered sets	27
1.4.13	Well-ordered sets	27
1.4.14	A canonical ordered-set structure on $\mathcal{P}X$	27
1.5	Operations on sets	27
1.5.1	. . . . .	27
1.5.2	$\{\text{nullary operations on } Y\} \longleftrightarrow Y$	27
1.5.3	Induced operations	28
1.5.4	. . . . .	28
1.6	Canonical operations on $\mathcal{P}X$	28
1.6.1	Canonical operations	28
1.6.2	Canonical nullary operations on $\mathcal{P}X$	28
1.6.3	The complement of a subset	29
1.6.4	Involutions on a set	29
1.6.5	Canonical unary operations on $\mathcal{P}X$	29
1.6.6	Canonical binary operations on $\mathcal{P}X$	29
1.6.7	. . . . .	29
1.7	Operations on Statements	30
1.7.1	Basic binary operations on sentences	30
1.7.2	Negation	30
1.7.3	Validity of the corresponding statements	30
1.7.4	Operations on Statements = Relations on Statements	30
1.7.5	Operations on relations	30
1.7.6	. . . . .	31
1.8	Quantification	31
1.8.1	Universal quantification	31
1.8.2	Universal quantification over a subset	31
1.8.3	. . . . .	31
1.8.4	" Statement S is a special case of statement T "	31
1.8.5	" Statement S trivially implies statement T "	32
1.8.6	Existential quantification	32
1.8.7	. . . . .	32

1.8.8	.....	32
1.8.9	.....	33
1.9	Induced relations	33
1.9.1	.....	33
1.9.2	Induced relations on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$	34
1.9.3	The equipotence relation on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$	34
1.9.4	Caveat	34
1.9.5	Equipotence classes of statements	34
1.9.6	The implication relation on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$	34
1.9.7	Caveat	34
1.9.8	The canonical preorder on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$	35
1.9.9	Terminology: <i>implies, is weaker than, is stronger than</i>	35
1.9.10	.....	35
1.10	Functions of n variables viewed as $(n + 1)$ -ary relations	36
1.10.1	.....	36
1.10.2	.....	36
1.10.3	.....	36
1.11	Composing relations	36
1.11.1	.....	36
1.11.2	.....	37
1.12	Cartesian product $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$	37
1.12.1	.....	37
1.12.2	The concept of an ordered n -tuple	37
1.12.3	.....	37
1.12.4	The equality principle	38
1.12.5	The standard set-theoretic model of an ordered pair	38
1.12.6	.....	38
1.12.7	.....	38
1.12.8	An ordered n -tuple as a function	39
1.12.9	Universal functions of n -variables	39
1.12.10	The canonical function of n -variables $X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$	39
1.12.11	.....	39
1.12.12	The case of functions of zero variables	39
1.12.13	Canonical identification $\text{Op}_o(Y) \longleftrightarrow \text{Func}(\emptyset^\emptyset, Y)$	40
1.12.14	.....	40
1.12.15	Canonical projections $(\pi_i)_{i \in \{1, \dots, n\}}$	40
1.12.16	<i>Naturality</i> of Cartesian product	40
1.12.17	The graph of a relation	41
1.12.18	.....	41
1.12.19	Correspondences	41
1.12.20	.....	41
1.12.21	1-correspondences	41
1.12.22	.....	42

1.12.23	Caveat	42
1.12.24	. . . . .	42
1.12.25	. . . . .	42
1.12.26	. . . . .	42
1.12.27	The function-list canonically associated with an n -correspondence	43
1.12.28	Oriented graphs	43
1.12.29	2-Correspondences as oriented graphs	43
1.13	The language of diagrams	43
1.13.1	. . . . .	43
1.13.2	Commutative diagrams	43
1.13.3	. . . . .	43
1.13.4	. . . . .	44
1.13.5	An example	44
1.13.6	. . . . .	44
1.13.7	. . . . .	44
1.13.8	Diagram chasing	45
1.13.9	. . . . .	45
1.13.10	. . . . .	45
1.13.11	. . . . .	46
1.13.12	\sim -commutative diagrams	46
1.14	Power-set functions induced by a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$	47
1.14.1	The <i>image-of-a-subset</i> and the <i>preimage-of-a-subset</i> functions f_* and f^*	47
1.14.2	A comment about notation	47
1.14.3	. . . . .	47
1.14.4	. . . . .	47
1.14.5	The <i>fiber</i> of a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ at $y \in Y$	48
1.14.6	Caveat	48
1.14.7	The characteristic function of a subset	48
1.14.8	. . . . .	48
1.14.9	. . . . .	49
1.14.10	A remark about terminology: a <i>map</i> , a <i>mapping</i>	49
1.14.11	Comments about the usual “definitions” of the image and the preimage functions.	49
1.14.12	The <i>conjugate image</i> function $f_!$	49
1.14.13	. . . . .	50
1.14.14	. . . . .	50
1.14.15	. . . . .	51
1.14.16	. . . . .	51
1.14.17	Pull-back of a relation	52
1.14.18	Push-forward of a relation	52
1.14.19	. . . . .	52
1.15	Families of sets	52
1.15.1	. . . . .	52

1.15.2	Notation	53
1.15.3	Families of sets	53
1.15.4	The union of a family of subsets of a set	53
1.15.5	The intersection of a family of subsets of a set	53
1.15.6	. . . . .	53
1.15.7	Union and intersection of the <i>empty</i> family of subsets	54
1.15.8	. . . . .	54
1.15.9	Selectors of a family	54
1.15.10	A comment about the use of the quantifier notation	54
1.15.11	Axiom of Choice	55
1.15.12	The product of a family of sets	55
1.15.13	. . . . .	55
1.15.14	An equivalent form of Axiom of Choice	55
1.15.15	Independence of Axiom of Choice	55
1.16	Canonical functions between the sets-of-families	56
1.16.1	. . . . .	56
1.16.2	. . . . .	56
1.16.3	. . . . .	56
1.17	Indexed families of sets	57
1.17.1	. . . . .	57
1.17.2	The union and the intersection of an indexed family	57
1.17.3	. . . . .	57
1.17.4	Selectors of an indexed family	58
1.17.5	“Tuple” notation	58
1.17.6	The product of an indexed family of sets	58
1.17.7	. . . . .	58
1.17.8	Canonical projections (π_j)	58
1.17.9	Notation	59
1.17.10	Composition of correspondences	59
1.17.11	. . . . .	59
1.17.12	. . . . .	59
2	The language of mathematical structures	60
2.1	Mathematical structures	60
2.1.1	The concept of a mathematical structure	60
2.1.2	. . . . .	60
2.1.3	. . . . .	60
2.1.4	Structures of functional type	60
2.1.5	Structures of topological type	60
2.1.6	Example: topological spaces	60
2.1.7	Example: measurable spaces	60
2.2	Algebraic structures	61
2.2.1	. . . . .	61

2.2.2	Binary structures	61
2.2.3	Multiplicative notation	61
2.2.4	The <i>opposite</i> binary structure	61
2.2.5	Left- and Right Cancellation Properties	61
2.2.6	Left- and right-identity elements	61
2.2.7	. . . . .	62
2.2.8	Unital binary structures	62
2.2.9	. . . . .	62
2.2.10	Left- and right inverses of an element	62
2.2.11	Pointed sets	63
2.2.12	Idempotents	63
2.2.13	. . . . .	63
2.2.14	. . . . .	63
2.2.15	Power associative binary structures	63
2.2.16	Semigroups	63
2.2.17	. . . . .	64
2.2.18	Commutative binary structures	64
2.2.19	Terminology: <i>abelian</i> groups	64
2.2.20	Unital semigroups, i.e., monoids	64
2.2.21	Left- and right-invertible elements in a monoid	64
2.2.22	Invertible elements	65
2.2.23	. . . . .	65
2.2.24	Groups	65
2.2.25	. . . . .	66
2.2.26	The canonical monoid structure on $\text{Op}_1(X)$	66
2.2.27	Fixed points of a unary operation	66
2.2.28	A <i>retraction</i> of a set onto its subset	66
2.2.29	The permutation group of a set	67
2.2.30	Actions of sets on other sets	67
2.2.31	Standard multiplicative notation	67
2.2.32	Example: the <i>left</i> and the <i>right regular</i> actions of a semigroup	67
2.2.33	Example: the <i>adjoint</i> action of the group of invertible elements of a monoid	67
2.2.34	. . . . .	68
2.3	Relational structures	68
2.3.1	. . . . .	68
2.3.2	. . . . .	68
2.4	Substructures	68
2.4.1	. . . . .	68
2.4.2	Subsets	68
2.4.3	Algebraic substructures	68
2.4.4	. . . . .	69
2.4.5	. . . . .	69
2.4.6	The ordered set of substructures $\text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$	69

2.4.7	.....	69
2.4.8	Locally filtered families of subsets	70
2.4.9	The substructure $\langle A \rangle$ generated by a subset $A \subseteq X$	70
2.4.10	Invariant subsets	70
2.4.11	Coinvariant subsets	71
3	Morphisms	72
3.1	Interactions between mathematical structures	72
3.1.1	.....	72
3.1.2	The concept of a <i>concrete</i> morphism	72
3.1.3	.....	72
3.1.4	Terminology : an <i>endomorphism</i>	72
3.1.5	The monoid of endomorphisms $\text{End}(X, \text{data})$	72
3.1.6	Terminology : an <i>isomorphism</i>	73
3.1.7	Terminology : an <i>automorphism</i>	73
3.1.8	The group of automorphisms $\text{Aut}(X, \text{data})$	73
3.1.9	The arrow notation	73
3.2	Morphisms between algebraic structures	73
3.2.1	Homomorphisms	73
3.2.2	.....	73
3.2.3	.....	74
3.2.4	Example : morphisms between pointed sets	74
3.2.5	Example : morphisms between A -sets	74
3.2.6	.....	74
3.2.7	<i>Antihomomorphisms</i> between binary structures	74
3.2.8	Actions of binary structures (A, \cdot) on sets	75
3.2.9	.....	75
3.2.10	Right actions	75
3.2.11	.....	75
3.2.12	.....	76
3.3	Semirings	76
3.3.1	Sets equipped with two binary operations	76
3.3.2	Left Distributivity Property	76
3.3.3	Right Distributivity Property	76
3.3.4	Commutative semigroups	76
3.3.5	Semirings	76
3.3.6	0 and 1 in a semiring	77
3.3.7	.....	77
3.3.8	Rings	77
3.3.9	The ordered unital semiring-with-zero of natural numbers $(\mathbb{N}, 0, 1, +, \cdot, \leq)$	77
3.3.10	.....	77
3.3.11	.....	77
3.4	Morphisms between n -ary relations	78

3.4.1	.....	78
3.4.2	.....	78
3.4.3	.....	79
3.4.4	Definition of a \sim -morphism	79
3.4.5	.....	79
3.4.6	\Rightarrow -morphisms, \Leftarrow -morphisms, \Leftrightarrow -morphisms	79
3.4.7	.....	79
3.4.8	.....	79
3.4.9	Characterization of \Rightarrow -morphisms	80
3.4.10	Characterization of \Leftarrow -morphisms	80
3.4.11	Terminology	81
3.4.12	.....	81
3.4.13	Morphisms between relational structures	81
3.5	The ordered $*$ -monoid of 2-correspondences $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X); \Delta_X, \tau_*, \circ; \subseteq)$	81
3.5.1	.....	81
3.5.2	(Pre)ordered binary algebraic structures	81
3.5.3	The diagonal subsets $\Delta_n(X) \subset X^n$	82
3.5.4	The diagonal function $\Delta : X \longrightarrow X \times X$ and its image Δ_X	82
3.5.5	The graph homomorphism $\Gamma : (\text{Op}_1 X, \text{id}_X, \circ) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \Delta_X, \circ)$	82
3.5.6	Antiinvolutions	82
3.5.7	$*$ -binary structures	82
3.5.8	The flip operation on $X \times X$	83
3.5.9	.....	83
3.5.10	.....	83
3.5.11	The preordered $*$ -structure of binary relations $(\text{Rel}_2 X; =, ()^{\text{op}}, \circ; \Rightarrow)$	83
3.5.12	The graph homomorphism $\Gamma : (\text{Rel}_2 X; =, ()^{\text{op}}, \circ; \Rightarrow) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X \times X); \Delta_X, \tau_*, \circ; \subseteq)$	83
3.5.13	Graph characterizations of various types of binary relations	84
3.5.14	Subidempotent correspondences	84
3.5.15	.....	84
3.5.16	A weakest transitive relation stronger than ρ	84
3.5.17	A weakest reflexive relation stronger than ρ	85
3.5.18	A weakest preorder stronger than ρ	85
3.5.19	A weakest symmetric relation stronger than ρ	85
3.5.20	A weakest equivalence relation stronger than ρ	86
3.5.21	.....	86
3.6	Morphisms between structures of functional type	86
3.6.1	.....	86
3.6.2	.....	87
3.7	Morphisms between structures of topological type	87
3.7.1	.....	87
3.7.2	.....	87
3.7.3	.....	87
3.7.4	Continuous functions	88

3.7.5	Measurable functions	88
3.7.6	. . . . .	88
4	The language of categories	89
4.1	The concept of a category	89
4.1.1	. . . . .	89
4.1.2	. . . . .	89
4.1.3	. . . . .	89
4.1.4	. . . . .	89
4.2	Basic vocabulary	89
4.2.1	Epimorphisms	89
4.2.2	Monomorphisms	90
4.2.3	Initial objects	90
4.2.4	Terminal objects	90
4.3	Endomorphisms	90
4.3.1	. . . . .	90
4.3.2	The identity endomorphism	90
4.3.3	Unital categories	91
4.3.4	A right inverse of a morphism	91
4.3.5	Split epimorphisms	91
4.3.6	A left inverse of a morphism	91
4.3.7	Split monomorphisms	91
4.3.8	The inverse of a morphism	91
4.3.9	Isomorphisms	92
4.3.10	. . . . .	92
4.3.11	Arrow notation	92
4.3.12	The semigroup of endomorphisms	92
4.3.13	The monoid of endomorphisms	92
4.3.14	The group of automorphisms	92
4.3.15	An action of a set A on an object of a category	93
4.3.16	An action of a binary structure (A, \cdot) on an object of a category	93
4.3.17	An action of a monoid (A, e, \cdot) on an object of a <i>unital</i> category	93
4.3.18	Representation Theory of Groups	93
4.3.19	Category of k -linear representations of a group	93
4.3.20	. . . . .	93
5	Quotient structures	94
5.1	The concept of a quotient set	94
5.1.1	The equivalence class $[x]_\eta$ of an element $x \in X$	94
5.1.2	The quotient set X/η	94
5.1.3	. . . . .	94
5.1.4	The fiber equivalence relation $=_f$	94
5.1.5	The canonical factorization of a function $f : X \rightarrow X'$	95
5.1.6	The quotient of X by an arbitrary binary relation	95

5.1.7	The universal property of the canonical quotient map	95
5.1.8	Morphisms $(X, \rho) \longrightarrow (X', =)$	96
5.1.9	Morphisms $(X', =) \longrightarrow (X, \rho)$	96
5.1.10	. . . . .	96
5.1.11	Duality between the concepts of a subset and of a quotient set	97
5.2	Congruence relations	97
5.2.1	Congruence equivalence relations	97
5.2.2	The quotient structure $(X_{/\eta}, \bar{\mu})$	97
5.2.3	The operation $\bar{\mu}$ on $X_{/\eta}$ induced by μ	98
5.2.4	$(X_{/\eta}, (\bar{\mu}_i)_{i \in I})$	98
5.2.5	General congruence relations	98
5.2.6	A criterion for a binary relation to be a μ -congruence	98
5.3	Group congruence equivalences	99
5.3.1	Adjoint action of a group G on $\mathcal{P}G$	99
5.3.2	Normal subsets	99
5.3.3	. . . . .	99
5.3.4	Coset equivalence relations	100
5.3.5	The quotient group G/H	100
5.3.6	The kernel of a group homomorphism	100
5.3.7	The image of a group homomorphism	100
5.3.8	The canonical factorization of a group homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow G'$	100
5.4	Ring congruence equivalences	101
5.4.1	. . . . .	101
5.4.2	Ideals	101
5.4.3	. . . . .	101
5.4.4	The quotient ring R/J	101
5.4.5	The kernel of a ring homomorphism	101
5.4.6	The canonical factorization of a ring homomorphism $f : R \rightarrow R'$	101
5.4.7	The lattice of ideals $\Lambda(R)$	102
5.4.8	The sum of a family of ideals $\sum \mathcal{J}$	102
5.4.9	. . . . .	102
5.4.10	Functorial properties of $\Lambda(R)$	102
5.5	The K -group construction	103
5.5.1	Stable equivalence of formal differences	103
5.5.2	Stabilization	103
5.5.3	The K -group of a commutative semigroup	104
5.5.4	Canonical homomorphism $\delta : (A, +) \longrightarrow (K(A, +), +)$	104
5.5.5	Universal property of $\delta : (A, +) \longrightarrow (K(A, +), +)$	104
5.5.6	. . . . .	105
5.5.7	. . . . .	106
5.5.8	. . . . .	106
5.5.9	The ring of integers $(\mathbb{Z}, 0, 1, +, \cdot)$	106
5.5.10	Subgroups of the additive group of integers	107

5.5.11	The greatest common divisor of a subset $E \subseteq \mathbf{Z}$	107
5.5.12	The least common multiple of a subset $E \subseteq \mathbf{Z}$	107
5.5.13	The lattice of ideals of the ring of integers $(\mathbf{Z}, 0, 1, +, \cdot)$	107
5.6	(Central) <i>localization</i> of a ring	107
5.6.1	Central multiplicative subsets in a ring	107
5.6.2	S -fractions	108
5.6.3	Calculus of S -fractions	108
5.6.4	The algebraic structure $\text{Frac}_S(R)$ of S -fractions	108
5.6.5	. . . . .	108
5.6.6	. . . . .	108
5.6.7	. . . . .	109
5.6.8	Multiplicative stabilization	109
5.6.9	$R[S^{-1}]$	109
5.6.10	. . . . .	110
5.6.11	Canonical homomorphism $\lambda : R \longrightarrow R[S^{-1}]$	110
5.6.12	Universal property of $\lambda : R \longrightarrow R[S^{-1}]$	110
5.6.13	Zero divisors	111
5.6.14	Domains	111
5.7	Commutative Algebra	111
5.7.1	. . . . .	111
5.7.2	Notation: a, b, \dots	111
5.7.3	Notation: (a_1, \dots, a_n)	111
5.7.4	Principal ideals	111
5.7.5	Principal ideal domains	111
5.7.6	Prime ideals	112
5.7.7	Localization of A at a prime ideal \mathfrak{p}	112
5.7.8	. . . . .	112
5.7.9	The <i>field of fractions</i> of an integral domain	112
5.7.10	The prime spectrum $\text{Spec } A$ of a commutative unital ring A	112
5.7.11	Functorial properties of prime ideals	112
5.7.12	<i>Zariski closed</i> subsets $V(E) \subseteq \text{Spec } A$	113
5.7.13	. . . . .	113
5.7.14	. . . . .	113
5.7.15	Zariski topology	114
5.7.16	$\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}$	114
6	Binary relations	115
6.1	Preliminaries	115
6.1.1	Canonical identification $\text{Rel}(X, Y) \longleftrightarrow \text{Rel}(Y, X)$	115
6.1.2	A canonical involution on $\text{Rel}_2(X)$	115
6.2	Morphisms between binary relations	115
6.2.1	The definition expressed in terms of a \implies -commutative diagram	115
6.2.2	. . . . .	116

6.2.3	Morphisms between binary relational structures	116
6.3	Membership relation \in is a <i>universal relation</i>	116
6.3.1	. . . . .	116
6.3.2	. . . . .	117
6.3.3	Two <i>set-of-relatives</i> functions	117
6.3.4	. . . . .	118
6.3.5	. . . . .	118
6.3.6	The $\exists \rho \in$ -diagram	118
6.3.7	An indispensable equipment for a modern mathematician: “algebraic glasses”	119
6.3.8	Terminology: initial and terminal elements	119
6.3.9	The preorders on X and Y canonically associated with $\rho \in \text{Rel}(X, Y)$. . .	119
6.3.10	. . . . .	119
6.3.11	. . . . .	119
6.4	Functions $\mathcal{P}X \rightleftharpoons \mathcal{P}Y$ canonically associated with a binary relation.	120
6.4.1	$R : \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}Y$	120
6.4.2	The set of upper bounds of a subset of an ordered set	120
6.4.3	Right-directed binary relations	120
6.4.4	Directed sets	120
6.4.5	Supremum of a subset	120
6.4.6	$\mathcal{P}X \longleftarrow \mathcal{P}Y : L$	120
6.4.7	The set of lower bounds of a subset of an ordered set	121
6.4.8	Left-directed binary relations	121
6.4.9	Infimum of a subset	121
6.4.10	$R\emptyset = Y$ and $L\emptyset = X$	121
6.4.11	Example: $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$	121
6.4.12	. . . . .	122
6.4.13	The preorders on $\mathcal{P}X$ and $\mathcal{P}Y$ canonically associated with $\rho \in \text{Rel}(X, Y)$.	122
6.4.14	. . . . .	123
6.4.15	Ordered sets $\mathcal{L}(\rho)$ and $\mathcal{R}(\rho)$	123
6.4.16	A canonical isomorphism $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq) \simeq (\mathcal{R}(\rho), \supseteq)$	123
6.4.17	Case: ρ a symmetric relation	124
6.4.18	$(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ represented as $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$	124
6.5	A close look at the definition of a morphism between binary relations	124
6.5.1	. . . . .	124
6.5.2	$2 \times 2 \times 2$ characterizations of a morphism	124
6.5.3	2×2 characterizations of a \Leftrightarrow -morphism	126
6.5.4	Right-saturated morphisms	127
6.5.5	Left-saturated morphisms	127
6.5.6	Saturated subsets	127
6.5.7	Up-sets and down-sets	128
6.6	Filters	128
6.7	. . . . .	128
6.7.1	Principal filters \mathcal{P}_A	128

6.7.2	Ultrafilters	128
6.7.3	Principal ultrafilters	128
6.7.4	Finite-Intersection Property	128
6.8	Right- and left-complete binary relations	128
6.8.1	. . . . .	128
6.8.2	Bicomplete binary relations	129
6.8.3	Restricted notions of completeness	129
6.8.4	Completeness restricted to nonempty <i>bounded</i> subsets	130
6.8.5	Terminology: <i>complete</i> (pre)ordered sets	130
6.8.6	Finite completeness	130
6.9	Semilattices	131
6.9.1	\vee -semilattices	131
6.9.2	The associated monoid (X, \circ, \vee)	131
6.9.3	. . . . .	131
6.9.4	. . . . .	131
6.9.5	\wedge -semilattices	132
6.9.6	Terminology: lattices	132
6.10	Complete lattices	132
6.10.1	. . . . .	132
6.10.2	The complete lattice of algebraic substructures	132
6.10.3	An algebraic substructure generated by a subset	132
6.10.4	. . . . .	133
6.11	Right- and left-exact functions	133
6.11.1	. . . . .	133
6.11.2	Exact functions between binary relational structures	133
6.11.3	\sup - and \inf -exact functions	133
6.11.4	Example: <i>supremum</i> as a right-exact function	134
6.11.5	A basis of a complete lattice	135
6.11.6	Description of right-exact morphisms <i>from</i> a complete lattice with a basis	135
6.11.7	Right-exact morphisms $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq)$	136
6.11.8	Complete description of right- and left-exact morphisms between power-sets	137
6.11.9	Finitely exact functions	138
6.11.10	Finitely biexact functions between power-sets	138
6.11.11	Complete description of exact morphisms between power-sets	139
6.12	The canonical tower of morphisms	139
6.12.1	. . . . .	139
6.12.2	. . . . .	140
6.12.3	. . . . .	140
6.12.4	Biexact morphisms	141
6.12.5	Right- and left-dense functions	141
6.12.6	Bidense morphisms	141
6.12.7	. . . . .	142
6.12.8	Calculations in $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho), \sqsubseteq_L)$	142

6.13	Completion of a binary relation	143
6.13.1	. . . . .	143
6.13.2	. . . . .	143
6.13.3	. . . . .	144
6.13.4	The extended real line $(\bar{\mathbf{R}}, \leq)$	144
6.14	Bimorphisms between binary relations	144
6.14.1	. . . . .	144
6.14.2	. . . . .	144
6.14.3	. . . . .	145
6.14.4	. . . . .	146
6.14.5	. . . . .	148
6.14.6	. . . . .	148
6.15	Galois connections	148
6.15.1	. . . . .	148
6.15.2	. . . . .	149
6.15.3	Galois connections	149
6.15.4	Equipotence classes of binary relations represented as Galois connections .	150
6.16	Left and right adjoints: existence and exactness properties	150
6.16.1	Terminology	150
6.16.2	Uniqueness up to an equivalence	150
6.16.3	Existence of left and right adjoints	150
6.16.4	. . . . .	151
6.16.5	. . . . .	151
6.16.6	. . . . .	151
6.16.7	Example: f^* and its two adjoints f_* and $f_!$	152
6.16.8	. . . . .	152
6.16.9	Example: Relations versus correspondences	153
7	Topology	154
7.1	Binary relations between elements and subsets of a given set	154
7.1.1	. . . . .	154
7.1.2	The <i>conjugate</i> ε -relation	154
7.1.3	. . . . .	154
7.1.4	Unary operations on the power-set	154
7.1.5	. . . . .	155
7.1.6	Properties of the $\varepsilon[\]$ -operation transferred to relation ε	155
7.1.7	ε -invariant and ε -coinvariant families	155
7.1.8	. . . . .	155
7.1.9	X -indexed families $(\mathcal{E}_x)_{x \in X}$ of families of subsets of X	155
7.1.10	Invariant and coinvariant ε -relations	156
7.1.11	Idempotent relations	157
7.1.12	Interior relations	158
7.1.13	Adherence relations	158

7.1.14	.....	159
7.1.15	.....	159
7.1.16	<i>Open</i> subsets	159
7.1.17	Topologies on a set X	159
7.1.18	<i>Closed</i> subsets	159
7.1.19	Closed versus open subsets	159
7.2	<i>Topologizing</i> a set	159
7.2.1	Six equivalent approaches to topologizing a set	159
7.2.2	Terminology	160
7.2.3	Topological spaces: the standard definition	160
7.2.4	Standard notation	160
7.2.5	An alternative approach to topologizing a set	161
7.2.6	.....	161
7.2.7	.....	161
7.2.8	.....	161
7.2.9	A comment about proofs	162
7.2.10	Terminology and notation: <i>points</i> , <i>neighborhoods</i> and <i>the neighborhoods filter</i> of a point	163
7.2.11	<i>Pas de sept de la Topologie</i>	163
7.3	Morphisms	163
7.3.1	Concrete morphisms between ε -spaces	163
7.3.2	.....	164
7.3.3	A relation between $\ast \Rightarrow \cdot$ and $\cdot \Leftarrow \ast$ -morphisms	164
7.3.4	A relation between $\ast \Rightarrow \cdot$ and $\ast \Leftarrow \cdot$ -morphisms	165
7.3.5	Relations between $\ast \Rightarrow \cdot$ -morphisms and $\ast \Rightarrow \cdot$ -morphisms	166
7.3.6	Relations between $\cdot \Leftarrow \ast$ -morphisms and $\ast \Leftarrow \cdot$ -morphisms	167
7.3.7	Morphisms between monotonic ε -spaces	168
7.3.8	<i>Continuous</i> functions as morphisms between adherence ε -spaces	169
7.3.9	<i>Adherence</i> is the <i>primary</i> structure in classical approach to Topology	169
7.4	Compactology	169
7.4.1	A subset covered by a family of subsets	169
7.4.2	\mathcal{A} -compact subsets	169
7.4.3	Principal filter $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{A}}$ on $\mathcal{P}X$	169
7.4.4	Principal filter $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{A}}}$ on $\mathcal{P}X$	170
7.4.5	\mathcal{A} -prime filters	170
7.4.6	Functorial properties of prime filters	170
7.4.7	\mathcal{A} -generated filters	170
7.4.8	.....	171
7.5	Compactification of a topological space ($\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{T}$ and $\mathbb{C}_{\ast}\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{E}$)	172
7.5.1	A canonical embedding $X \hookrightarrow \text{Filt } X$	172
7.5.2	.....	173
7.5.3	.....	173
7.5.4	\mathcal{B} -compactness $\Leftrightarrow \mathcal{T}$ -compactness	173

7.5.5	.....	173
7.5.6	A distinguished fundamental system of open neighborhoods of $\mathcal{F} \in \text{Filt } X$.	173
7.5.7	A distinguished fundamental system of neighborhoods of $\mathcal{P}_{\{x\}} \in \text{Filt } X$. . .	173
7.5.8	A canonical embedding $X \hookrightarrow \text{Filt}^{\mathcal{T}\text{-prime}} X$	174

1 Preliminaries

1.1 The language of functions

1.1.1 Mathematical structures

Modern Mathematics is concerned with *mathematical structures*. A “mathematical structure” consists of one or more sets equipped with data of certain type.

This informal initial definition already covers practically all fundamental types of structures that a mathematician encounters on a daily basis.

1.1.2 The concept of a function

An example of a mathematical structure is provided by the familiar concept of a function. A function of n variables consists of

- a list of n sets

$$X_1, \dots, X_n \tag{1}$$

- a set Y

- an assignment

$$x_1, \dots, x_n \mapsto y \tag{2}$$

that assigns a *single* element y of set Y to *every* list x_1, \dots, x_n such that

$$x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_n \in X_n. \tag{3}$$

1.1.3 The domain of a function

The list of sets, (1), is called the *domain* of the function. We shall also call it the *source-list* and will refer to n as the *length* of that list.

1.1.4 The antdomain of a function

The set Y is called the *antdomain* of the function. We shall also refer to it as the *target*.

1.1.5 The argument-list and the value of a function

We shall refer to x_1, \dots, x_n satisfying Condition (3) as the *argument-list*. The single element $y \in Y$ that is assigned to it is then called the *value* of the function on that particular argument-list.

If the *name* of the function is, say, f , its value on the list x_1, \dots, x_n is denoted

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_n) \tag{4}$$

1.1.6 The arrow representation of a function

The symbolic representation of a function

$$f : X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow Y \quad (5)$$

at a glance supplies the following information: *the function's name*, often represented by a symbol, its domain, and its target. In (5) the name of the function is ' f ', the domain is the list of sets X_1, \dots, X_n , and the target is the set denoted Y .

It is often more convenient to place the name of a function above the arrow representing the function

$$X_1, \dots, X_n \xrightarrow{f} Y .$$

1.1.7 Equality of functions

Two functions are declared to be *equal* if

- *their domains are equal,*
- *their targets are equal,*
- *and their assignments are equal.*

In particular, a function

$$V_1, \dots, V_m \xrightarrow{f} W$$

can be equal to a function

$$X_1, \dots, X_n \xrightarrow{g} Y$$

only when

$$m = n, \quad V_1 = X_1, \dots, V_m = X_m, \quad \text{and} \quad W = Y.$$

1.1.8 Functions of zero variables

When $n = 0$, the domain of a function is the empty list of sets. The arrow representation of such a function would be thus

$$\xrightarrow{f} Y \quad (6)$$

There is only one argument list in this case, namely the empty list. The function assigns to it a single element $y \in Y$. In particular,

$$f \longleftrightarrow \text{the value of } f \text{ on the empty argument-list}$$

defines a canonical identification between functions (6) and elements of the target-set Y .

1.1.9 Functions constant in the i -th variable

If the value (4) does not depend on x_i , we say that f is *constant in i -th variable*.

1.1.10

We shall denote the set of all functions (5) by

$$\text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_n; Y) \quad (7)$$

or

$$Y^{X_1, \dots, X_n}. \quad (8)$$

1.1.11 Lists with omitted entries

Since lists with certain entries having been omitted are frequently encountered in Mathematics, we have the notation to denote such lists. For example,

$$x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_i, \dots, x_n \quad (9)$$

stands for the list of length $n - 1$

$$x_1, \dots, x_{i-1}, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_n$$

while

$$x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_i, \dots, \hat{x}_j, \dots, x_n \quad (10)$$

stands for the list of length $n - 2$

$$x_1, \dots, x_{i-1}, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_{j-1}, x_{j+1}, \dots, x_n,$$

and so on.

1.1.12 Freezing a variable in a function of n -variables

For any $1 \leq i \leq n$ and any $a \in X_i$, assignment

$$x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_i, \dots, x_n \mapsto f(x_1, \dots, x_{i-1}, a, x_{i+1}, \dots, x_n)$$

defines a function of $n - 1$ variables

$$X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow Y. \quad (11)$$

We shall denote function (11) by $\text{ev}_a^i f$.

1.1.13 The associated evaluation functions of one variable

Assignment

$$x_i \mapsto \text{ev}_{x_i}^i f$$

defines a function of a single variable

$$X_i \longrightarrow \text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n; Y) \quad (12)$$

We shall denote function (12) by $\text{ev}^i f$ and call it the i -th *evaluation function* associated with a function f .

1.1.14 Adjunction correspondence

Assignment

$$f \mapsto \text{ev}^i f$$

defines a canonical bijection

$$\text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_n; Y) \longleftrightarrow \text{Funct}(X_i, \text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n; Y)) \quad (13)$$

whose inverse is given by sending a function

$$\phi \in \text{Funct}(X_i, \text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n; Y))$$

to the function

$$X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow Y, \quad x_1, \dots, x_n \mapsto (\phi(x_i))(x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_i, \dots, x_n).$$

Correspondence (13) is a manifestation of what is perhaps the single most important phenomenon in Modern Mathematics known as a *pair of adjoint functors*. This is not your first encounter with this phenomenon—you encountered it in some fundamental theorems of basic Mathematical curriculum, but it is the first time that you are expressly told about it.

1.1.15

In order to describe the conceptual mechanics behind the concept of *adjoint* functors, one needs to introduce a proper language, the language of *morphisms* and *categories*, cf. Chapters 3 and 4.

1.1.16 Adjunction correspondence in exponential notation

Canonical identification (13) in exponential notation (8) acquires particularly suggestive form

$$Y^{X_1, \dots, X_n} \longleftrightarrow \left(Y^{X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n} \right)^{X_i}. \quad (14)$$

1.1.17 Surjective functions

A function (5) is said to be *surjective* if

$$\text{for every } y \in Y \text{ there exists an argument-list } x_1, \dots, x_n \text{ such that } f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = y. \quad (15)$$

You are likely to be familiar with an informal expression “a function f is onto” instead of being surjective. I encourage you to use the term surjective.

1.1.18 Injective functions

A function (5) is said to be *injective* if it has the property

$$\text{if } f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = f(x'_1, \dots, x'_n), \text{ for two argument-lists, then the two argument-lists are equal.} \quad (16)$$

You are likely to be familiar with an informal expression “a function f is one-to-one” instead of being injective.

1.1.19 Bijective functions

A function is said to be *bijective* if it is both surjective and injective. This terminology is used primarily for functions of a single variable.

1.2 Composition of functions

1.2.1 Postcomposition

Given a function (5) and a function $g : Y \rightarrow Y'$, their composition yields the function

$$g \circ f : X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow Y', \quad x_1, \dots, x_n \longmapsto g(f(x_1, \dots, x_n)). \quad (17)$$

1.2.2

Postcomposition with a function g is itself a function between the function sets

$$g_* : \text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_n; Y) \longrightarrow \text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_n; Y'), \quad f \longmapsto g \circ f. \quad (18)$$

1.2.3 Precomposition

Given a function (5) and a function-list b_1, \dots, b_n ,

$$X'_1, \dots, X'_m \xrightarrow{b_1} X_1 \quad , \quad \dots \quad , \quad X'_1, \dots, X'_m \xrightarrow{b_n} X_n \quad (19)$$

their composition yields the function

$$f \circ (b_1, \dots, b_n) : X'_1, \dots, X'_m \longrightarrow Y, \quad x'_1, \dots, x'_m \longmapsto f(b_1(x'_1, \dots, x'_m), \dots, b_n(x'_1, \dots, x'_m)). \quad (20)$$

1.2.4

Precomposition with a function-list b_1, \dots, b_n is itself a function between the function sets

$$(b_1, \dots, b_n)^* : \text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_n; Y) \longrightarrow \text{Funct}(X'_1, \dots, X'_m; Y), \quad f \longmapsto f \circ (b_1, \dots, b_n). \quad (21)$$

1.2.5 Invertible functions of a single variable

Composition of functions of a single variable produces a function of a single variable. We say that $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is a *left-invertible* function, if there exists a function $g : Y \rightarrow X$ such that

$$g \circ f = id_X. \quad (22)$$

We say that $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is a *right-invertible* function, if there exists a function $g : Y \rightarrow X$ such that

$$f \circ g = id_Y. \quad (23)$$

Exercise 1 Show that, if g is a left inverse of f and h is a right inverse of f , then $g = h$.

1.2.6

We denote that unique left- and right-inverse by f^{-1} .

Exercise 2 Show that a left-invertible function f is injective and a right-invertible function is surjective.

In particular, an invertible function is bijective.

Exercise 3 Show that a bijective function is invertible.

Lemma 1.1 Suppose that $f : X \rightarrow Y$ is injective. Then there is a natural correspondence between left inverses of f and functions $h : Y \setminus f_*X \rightarrow X$.

Proof. The target of a function f is the union of disjoint sets

$$Y' := f_*X \quad \text{and} \quad Y'' := Y \setminus f_*X.$$

Exercise 4 Show that $g : Y \rightarrow X$ is a left inverse of f if and only if the restriction of g to Y' is the function

$$y \mapsto \text{the unique } x \in X \text{ such that } f(x) = y.$$

Thus, the set of left inverses of f is in bijective correspondence with the set of functions $Y'' \rightarrow X$,

$$\text{Left Inverses}(f) \longleftrightarrow \text{Func}(Y'', X), \quad g \mapsto g|_{Y''}.$$

□

Since the function set $\text{Func}(Y'', X)$ is not empty as long as either X is not empty or Y'' is empty, we obtain the following two corollaries.

Corollary 1.2 A function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ with $X \neq \emptyset$ is left-invertible if and only if f is injective. A function $f : \emptyset \rightarrow Y$ is left invertible if and only $Y = \emptyset$, i.e., if and only if f is bijective.

Corollary 1.3 A function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ with $X \neq \emptyset$ is bijective if and only if it has a unique left-inverse. That unique left-inverse is also a right-inverse.

1.2.7 Finite sets

We say that a set is *finite* if every left-invertible function $f : X \rightarrow X$ is invertible.

1.2.8 Infinite sets

Accordingly, we say that a set X is *infinite*, if it admits a left-invertible function $f : X \rightarrow X$ that is not right-invertible.

1.2.9 Axiom of Infinity

The so called *Axiom of Infinity* of Set Theory asserts existence of an infinite set.

Existence of an infinite set cannot be proven using the remaining axioms of Set Theory. In fact, the remaining axioms of Set Theory are consistent with the assertion that every set is finite.

We shall prove later that Axiom of Infinity is equivalent to existence of the *semiring* $(\mathbf{N}, 0, 1, +, \cdot)$ of natural numbers.

1.3 The language of relations

1.3.1 Statements

A *statement* is a well-formed sentence that is either true or false. Any human language whose vocabulary is extended by adding various, previously defined, mathematical terms, is acceptable.

1.3.2 A relation is a function whose values are statements

A *relation* on sets X_1, \dots, X_n is a function of n variables

$$\rho : X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x_1, \dots, x_n \longmapsto \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n). \quad (24)$$

We say in this case that ρ is an n -ary relation. We also say that the relation is *between* elements of sets X_1, \dots, X_n .

1.3.3

Statement $\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n)$, i.e., the value of ρ on the argument list x_1, \dots, x_n , needs not refer to some or even to anyone of the element variables x_i .

1.3.4 Total relations

Statement $\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ may hold for every list of arguments. Such a relation is sometimes referred to as a *total* relation.

1.3.5 Void relations

Statement $\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ may fail for every list of arguments. Such a relation is sometimes referred to as a *void* relation.

1.3.6 Nullary, unary, binary, ternary, ... relations

For small values of n , instead of speaking about 0-ary, 1-ary, 2-ary, 3-ary, ..., relations, we speak of *nullary*, *unary*, *binary*, *ternary*, ..., relations.

1.3.7 {nullary relations} \longleftrightarrow {statements}

According to Section 1.1.8, there is a canonical identification between *nullary relations* and *statements*.

1.3.8

Since a nullary relation reduces to a single statement, and since every statement either holds or fails, a nullary relation is either total or void.

1.3.9 Relations on a set

When all sets X_i in the domain coincide with a set X , we speak of an n -ary relation *on* X .

1.4 Binary relations *on* a set: a vocabulary of terms

1.4.1

Binary relations on a set X call for a special attention in view of the central role they play in every area of Mathematics.

1.4.2 Infix notation

In view of the fact that binary relations have been used by mathematicians long before the concept of a general relation was formulated and are still the most frequently encountered type of relation, special notation has been employed when binary relations are mentioned. The symbolic expression

$$x_1 \rho x_2$$

has the meaning :

Statement $\rho(x_1, x_2)$ holds.

1.4.3 Tilde notation

More likely, however, you will see expressions like

$$x_1 \sim x_2, \quad (25)$$

since symbol \sim and its variants have been adopted as a generic symbol denoting a binary relation. The meaning of (25) is :

the binary relation in question, denoted \sim , holds for elements $x_1 \in X_1$ and $x_2 \in X_2$.

The difference between the *functional* notation and the *tilde* notation, when talking about binary relations, is similar to the difference between *direct speech* and *indirect speech*: compare the statements

$$3 < 5$$

and

inequality $3 < 5$ holds.

1.4.4 Various types of binary relations on a set

A binary relation ρ on a set X is said to be :

reflexive if

$$\forall_{x \in X} \rho(x, x) \quad (26)$$

symmetric if

$$\forall_{x, y \in X} (\rho(x, y) \Rightarrow \rho(y, x)) \quad (27)$$

antisymmetric if

$$\forall_{x, y \in X} (\rho(x, y) \Rightarrow \neg \rho(y, x)) \quad (28)$$

weakly antisymmetric if

$$\forall_{x,y \in X} (\rho(x,y) \wedge \neg \rho(y,x) \Rightarrow x = y) \quad (29)$$

transitive if

$$\forall_{x,y,z \in X} (\rho(x,y) \wedge \rho(y,z) \Rightarrow \rho(x,z)) \quad (30)$$

1.4.5

Of all the properties that a binary relation ρ on a set X may have, by far the most important is its *transitivity*.

1.4.6 Preorder relations

A transitive and reflexive relation is called a *preorder* or a *quasiorder*.

1.4.7 Equivalence relations

A symmetric preorder that is called an *equivalence relation*.

Exercise 5 Suppose that ρ is a preorder relation on a set X . Show that the conjunction of ρ and its opposite relation ρ^{op}

$$\rho \wedge \rho^{\text{op}} : X, X \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x, y \longmapsto “\rho(x,y) \wedge \rho(y,x)”, \quad (31)$$

is an equivalence relation on X .

We shall refer to a pair of elements satisfying $\rho \wedge \rho^{\text{op}}$ as ρ -*equivalent*.

1.4.8 Order relations

A weakly antisymmetric preorder is called an *order relation*. A preorder is an order relation precisely when (31) is the *weakest equivalence relation* on X , i.e., when $\rho \wedge \rho^{\text{op}}$ is equipotent with the equality relation $=$.

1.4.9 Sharp order relations

An antisymmetric transitive relation is called a *sharp-order relation*.

1.4.10 Ordered sets

A set X equipped with an order relation will be called an *ordered set*. We shall use the generic symbol \leq to denote the order relation. When using the term “ordered set”, remember that it is not a set, it is a binary relational structure (X, \leq) .

1.4.11 Comments about terminology and notation

To emphasize that elements of an ordered set are not necessarily *comparable*, the adverb “partially” is often placed in front of “ordered”. Those who insisted on using the term “partially ordered set” soon began to abbreviate it in typed texts as “p. o. sets.” When the abbreviation dots got lost, a monstrous term “poset” was born. My advise: *do not use it*.

Bad habits have a tendency to spread like a virus. For example, the habit of using so called “blackboard-bold” letters in print where one should use upright boldface letters **N**, **Z**, **Q**, **R**, **C** as standard notation for the set of natural numbers, the set of integers, and so on.

1.4.12 Linearly ordered sets

Ordered sets whose elements are *comparable*, i.e., satisfy the condition

$$\forall_{x,y \in X} x \leq y \vee y \leq x, \quad (32)$$

are called *linearly*, or *totally*, ordered.

Naturally defined linear orders are scarce, unlike (partial) orders.

1.4.13 Well-ordered sets

Even scarcer are *well-ordering* relations, i.e., order relations for which every *nonempty* subset $A \subseteq X$ has the smallest element. A prime example of a well-ordered set is the set of natural numbers **N**, cf. Section 3.3.11.

1.4.14 A canonical ordered-set structure on $\mathcal{P}X$

The set-containment relation equips the power-set of any set with a canonical ordered-set structure

$$\subseteq : \mathcal{P}X, \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad A, B \longmapsto "A \subseteq B". \quad (33)$$

The ordered-set $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ and its opposite, $(\mathcal{P}X, \supseteq)$, prove to play a central role in Mathematics.

1.5 Operations on sets

1.5.1

An *n-ary operation* on a set Y is a function

$$\mu : X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow Y \quad (34)$$

where all the sets X_1, \dots, X_n are equal to Y .

1.5.2 {nullary operations on Y } $\longleftrightarrow Y$

To declare a nullary operation on a set Y is equivalent to supplying a single element of Y . For this reason, nullary operations on Y are thought of as “distinguished” elements of Y . In particular, there is a canonical bijection between the set of nullary operations on Y and the set Y itself.

1.5.3 Induced operations

Given a list of n functions of m variables,

$$f_1, \dots, f_n \in \text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_m; Y), \quad (35)$$

let us assign to the argument list

$$x_1, \dots, x_m$$

the list of values

$$f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), \dots, f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m)$$

and then apply the operation μ . Composite assignment

$$x_1, \dots, x_m \mapsto f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), \dots, f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m) \mapsto \mu(f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), \dots, f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m))$$

defines a function $X_1, \dots, X_m \longrightarrow Y$. We shall denote this function by $\mu_\bullet(f_1, \dots, f_n)$.

Assignment

$$f_1, \dots, f_n \mapsto \mu_\bullet(f_1, \dots, f_n) \quad (36)$$

defines then an n -ary operation μ_\bullet on the set of functions $\text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_m; Y)$. We refer to it as the operation *induced by μ* .

1.5.4

Operations on sets of Y -valued functions induced by operations defined on Y have been playing an essential role in Mathematics since the time when the foundations of Differential and Integral Calculus had been laid down nearly 400 years ago.

1.6 Canonical operations on $\mathcal{P}X$

1.6.1 Canonical operations

A general set X has no distinguished elements, hence it is not equipped with any distinguished nullary operation. Similarly, there are no distinguished binary, ternary, etc., operations on a general set. The identity function

$$\text{id}_X : X \longrightarrow X, \quad x \mapsto x, \quad (37)$$

is the only distinguished unary operation.

Certain sets, however, are *naturally* equipped with various operations. We refer to such operations as *canonical*. An example of prime importance is provided by the set of all subsets, $\mathcal{P}X$, of an arbitrary set X . A shorter designation for $\mathcal{P}X$ is the *power-set of X* .

1.6.2 Canonical nullary operations on $\mathcal{P}X$

The power-set of a general nonempty set has exactly two distinguished elements: the empty subset \emptyset and X . In other words, $\mathcal{P}X$ is equipped with exactly two canonical nullary operations.

1.6.3 The complement of a subset

The power-set of a general set has a canonical unary operation

$$\mathbb{C} : \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}X, \quad A \longmapsto \mathbb{C}A := \{x \in X \mid x \notin A\}, \quad (38)$$

that sends a subset $A \subseteq X$ to its *complement*. We shall usually denote the complement of a subset $A \subseteq X$ by A^c and use symbol \mathbb{C} to denote the complement operation.

1.6.4 Involutions on a set

Note that $\mathbb{C}^2 := \mathbb{C} \circ \mathbb{C}$ is the identity operation. A unary operation $\mu : X \rightarrow X$ with this property is called an *involution* (on a set X). The identity operation id_X is a *trivial* involution.

1.6.5 Canonical unary operations on $\mathcal{P}X$

The power-set $\mathcal{P}X$ of a nonempty set is equipped with exactly two unary operations, both of them involutions on $\mathcal{P}X$: the identity operation $\text{id}_{\mathcal{P}X}$ and the complement operation \mathbb{C} .

1.6.6 Canonical binary operations on $\mathcal{P}X$

Union of two sets,

$$A, B \longmapsto A \cup B,$$

intersection of two sets,

$$A, B \longmapsto A \cap B,$$

difference of two sets,

$$A, B \longmapsto A \setminus B,$$

are examples of canonical binary operations on the power-set.

1.6.7

Any one of the above three operations can be expressed in terms of any of the remaining two and of the complement operation. For example, the union and the intersection operations are linked to each other by the following pair of identities

$$A \cap B = \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}A \cup \mathbb{C}B) \quad \text{and} \quad A \cup B = \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}A \cap \mathbb{C}B) \quad (A, B \subseteq X) \quad (39)$$

called *de Morgan laws*.

Note also the following identities

$$A \cup \mathbb{C}A = X, \quad A \cap \mathbb{C}A = \emptyset \quad \text{and} \quad A \setminus B = A \cap \mathbb{C}B = \mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}A \cup B)^c \quad (A, B \subseteq X).$$

Exercise 6 Find the identity expressing \cap in terms of \setminus and \mathbb{C} , and prove it.

1.7 Operations on Statements

1.7.1 Basic binary operations on sentences

The following table contains the list of basic binary operations on sentences (symbols P and Q stand for arbitrary sentences).

READ:	SYMBOLIC NOTATION	NAME
P and Q	$P \wedge Q$	Conjunction
P or Q	$P \vee Q$	Alternative
if P , then Q	$P \Rightarrow Q$	Implication
P if and only if Q	$P \Leftrightarrow Q$	Equivalence

1.7.2 Negation

The negated sentence P will be symbolically denoted $\neg P$. In many languages, negating a sentence is performed according to rules that depend on the syntactical structure of that sentence. For this reason, it is difficult or impossible to provide one single reading of the negated sentence $\neg P$. We can circumvent this difficulty by saying, instead, “the negation of P ” or “ P negated”, when we need to refer to $\neg P$.

1.7.3 Validity of the corresponding statements

Assuming that P and Q are statements,

- $P \wedge Q$ holds precisely when P and Q hold;
- $P \vee Q$ holds precisely when P or Q holds;
- $P \Rightarrow Q$ fails if P holds and Q fails, otherwise it holds;
- $P \Leftrightarrow Q$ holds precisely when P and Q both hold or both fail;
- $\neg P$ holds precisely when P fails.

In particular, Conjunction, Alternative, Implication, Equivalence, define binary operations on the set of Statements, while Negation defines a unary operation.

1.7.4 Operations on Statements = Relations on Statements

On the set of statements the concepts of an n -ary operation and of an n -ary relation coincide.

1.7.5 Operations on relations

Any operation on Statements induces the corresponding operations on the sets of relations, $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$, between elements of sets X_1, \dots, X_n .

1.7.6

Thus, given relations $\rho, \sigma \in \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$, we can form the relations $\neg\rho$, $\rho \vee \sigma$, $\rho \wedge \sigma$, $\rho \Rightarrow \sigma$ and $\rho \Leftrightarrow \sigma$. They assign to an argument list x_1, \dots, x_n the statements

$$\neg\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n), \quad \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \vee \sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n), \quad \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \wedge \sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n), \quad \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \Rightarrow \sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n)$$

and, respectively,

$$\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \Leftrightarrow \sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n).$$

1.8 Quantification

1.8.1 Universal quantification

Given a relation ρ between elements of sets X_1, \dots, X_n , and a subset $A_i \subseteq X_i$, by assigning to a list $x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_i, \dots, x_n$ the statement

$$\text{for all } x_i \in X_i, \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \quad (40)$$

we obtain an $(n-1)$ -ary relation between elements of sets $X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n$. Instead of “for all”, we can also say “for every” with the same meaning.

Symbolically, statement (40) is represented

$$\forall_{x_i \in A_i} \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n). \quad (41)$$

1.8.2 Universal quantification over a subset

The above construction defines what is called *universal quantification over a subset*. By assigning to a relation $\rho \in \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ the resulting relation $\forall_{x_i \in A_i} \rho$, we obtain a function

$$\forall_{x_i \in A_i} : \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n) \longrightarrow \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n), \quad \rho \longmapsto \forall_{x_i \in A_i} \rho. \quad (42)$$

1.8.3

Statement (41) is naturally the value of a canonically defined function

$$\forall^i : \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n) \longrightarrow \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, \mathcal{P}X_i, \dots, X_n), \quad x_1, \dots, A_i, \dots, x_n \longmapsto \forall_{x_i \in A_i} \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n), \quad (43)$$

that preserves the number of arguments of ρ and replaces set X_i , the i -th entry in the domain-list, by its power-set $\mathcal{P}X_i$. Superscript i indicates that we are quantifying the relation with respect to the i -th variable.

1.8.4 “Statement S is a special case of statement T ”

Suppose $\rho : X \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$ is a (unary) relation on a set X . Consider the statements obtained by universal quantification of relation ρ over subsets $A \subseteq X$ and $B \subseteq X$

$$S := “\forall_{x \in A} \rho(x)” \quad \text{and} \quad T := “\forall_{x \in B} \rho(x)” . \quad (44)$$

Note that, if $A \subseteq B$, then

$$S \implies T. \quad (45)$$

If so, we shall say that *statement S is a special case of statement T* .

In general, given two statements S and T , we shall say that S is a special case of T if there exist

a unary relation ρ on a certain set X and subsets $A \subseteq B \subseteq X$

such that S and T have the form as in (44).

1.8.5 “ Statement S trivially implies statement T ”

Note that in order to establish implication (45), one does not need to know anything about a set X , a relation ρ on X , or subsets A and B . One only needs to know that both statements are obtained by *universal* quantification of the *same* certain unary relation over two subsets $A \subseteq B$ of X .

This is one of those situations when mathematicians are likely to say that a statement S *trivially* implies a statement T .

1.8.6 Existential quantification

Assigning to a list $x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_i, \dots, x_n$ the statement

$$\text{there exists } x_i \in X_i \text{ such that } \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \quad (46)$$

defines another an $(n-1)$ -ary relation between elements of sets $X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n$.

Symbolically, statement (46) is represented

$$\exists_{x_i \in X_i} \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n).$$

Exercise 7 Formulate the definitions of functions $\exists_{x_i \in A_i}$ and \exists^i in analogy with the definitions given in Sections 1.8.2 and 1.8.3.

1.8.7

Suppose $\rho : X \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$ is a (unary) relation on a set X . Consider the statements obtained by existential quantification of relation ρ over subsets $A \subseteq X$ and $B \subseteq X$

$$S := “ \exists_{x \in A} \rho(x) ” \quad \text{and} \quad T := “ \exists_{x \in B} \rho(x) ”. \quad (47)$$

Note that, if $A \subseteq B$, then

$$T \implies S. \quad (48)$$

Also in this case we say that statement T *trivially implies* statement S .

1.8.8

Operations of quantification are frequently iterated. For example, given $i \neq j$,

$$\forall_{x_i \in X_i} \exists_{x_j \in X_j} \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n)$$

denotes the statement:

$$\text{for all } x_i \in X_i, \text{ there exists } x_j \in X_j \text{ such that } \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n).$$

1.8.9

The statement

$$\forall_{\varepsilon \in \mathbf{R}^+} \exists_{i \in \mathbf{N}} \forall_{j \in \mathbf{N}} (i \leq j \Rightarrow |x_j - a| < \varepsilon) \quad (49)$$

describes the fact that a sequence of real numbers (x_n) converges to a point a of the real line. Here, \mathbf{R}^+ denotes the set of positive real numbers and \mathbf{N} denotes the set of natural numbers. The statement is about sequences (x_n) of real numbers and points a of the real line. It defines a binary relation between elements of these two sets. The relation is the result of applying one-after-another universal and existential quantification to the statement that has the form of implication

$$i \leq j \Rightarrow |x_j - a| < \varepsilon. \quad (50)$$

Here x_j denotes the j -th term of the sequence (x_n) . Statement (50) is a statement about natural numbers i and j , a sequence of real numbers (x_n) , a point of the real line a , and a positive real number ε . As such, it is a 5-ary relation. Application of three consecutive quantifications yields the binary relation defined in (49).

What you see here are examples of typical statements encountered in Mathematical Analysis.

Exercise 8 Let $\rho : X_1, X_2 \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$ be a binary relation. Consider the statements

$$S := " \exists_{x_1 \in A_1} \forall_{x_2 \in A_2} \rho(x_1, x_2) " \quad \text{and} \quad T := " \exists_{x_1 \in B_1} \forall_{x_2 \in B_2} \rho(x_1, x_2) "$$

where A_1 and B_1 are subsets of X_1 while A_2 and B_2 are subsets of X_2 . Under what condition on A_1 , A_2 , B_1 and B_2 , statement S implies statement T ?

1.9 Induced relations

1.9.1

Given a list of n functions of m variables (35) and an n -ary relation $\rho \in \text{Rel}_n Y$, the composite $\rho.(f_1, \dots, f_n)$ is an m -ary relation

$$\rho.(f_1, \dots, f_n) : X_1, \dots, X_m \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x_1, \dots, x_m \longmapsto \rho(f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), \dots, f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m)). \quad (51)$$

Universal quantification over $x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_m \in X_m$ transforms (51) into a statement. If we assign this statement to function-list f_1, \dots, f_n ,

$$f_1, \dots, f_n \longmapsto \forall_{x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_m \in X_m} \rho(f_1(x_1, \dots, x_m), \dots, f_n(x_1, \dots, x_m)), \quad (52)$$

we obtain an n -ary relation on the set of functions $\text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_m; Y)$. Here

$$\forall_{x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_m \in X_m}$$

is an abbreviation for

$$\forall_{x_1 \in X_1} \dots \forall_{x_m \in X_m}.$$

We shall denote relation (52) by $\hat{\rho}$ and will refer to it as the *induced relation* or as the relation *induced by* ρ .

Exercise 9 Show that the relation induced by a preorder is a preorder.

1.9.2 Induced relations on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$

Recalling that, on the set of statements, there is no difference between relations and operations, we observe that any binary operation on the set of statements induces a binary relation on the set of relations $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$.

1.9.3 The equipotence relation on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$

We shall denote by \Leftrightarrow the relation induced by Equivalence \Leftrightarrow , an *operation* on the set of statements. We shall refer to this induced relation as the *equipotence relation*. Following an old habit, mathematicians refer to equipotent relations as *equivalent*. This is one of many uses of the term *equivalent* by mathematicians. One should remember that an *equivalence relation* is a generic term for a binary relation on any set that is *reflexive, symmetric, and transitive*, cf. Section 1.4.7.

1.9.4 Caveat

One must be careful to distinguish, $\rho \Leftrightarrow \sigma$, the relation obtained by applying the induced binary *operation*

$$\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n), \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n) \longrightarrow \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n), \quad \rho, \sigma \mapsto \rho \Leftrightarrow \sigma, \quad (53)$$

to the pair ρ, σ , from $\rho \Leftrightarrow \sigma$. The latter is a single *statement*, namely

$$\rho \Leftrightarrow \sigma \quad := \quad " \forall_{x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_n \in X_n} \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \Leftrightarrow \sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n) " .$$

The former, $\rho \Leftrightarrow \sigma$, is a function

$$X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x_1, \dots, x_n \mapsto " \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \Leftrightarrow \sigma(x_1, \dots, x_n) " . \quad (54)$$

This distinction disappears when the domain-list X_1, \dots, X_n is empty, i.e., when ρ and σ are *statements*.

1.9.5 Equipotence classes of statements

By definition, there are just two equipotence classes of statements

$$\top := \{S \in \text{Statements} \mid S \text{ holds}\} \quad \text{and} \quad \perp := \{S \in \text{Statements} \mid S \text{ does not hold}\} . \quad (55)$$

There is a canonical bijective correspondence

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Equipotence classes of relations} \\ \rho : X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow \text{Statements} \end{array} \right\} \longleftrightarrow \text{Funct}(X_1, \dots, X_n; \{\top, \perp\}) . \quad (56)$$

1.9.6 The implication relation on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$

We shall denote by \Rightarrow the relation on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ that is induced by Conditional \Rightarrow , an *operation* on the set of statements. We shall refer to this induced relation as the *implication relation*.

1.9.7 Caveat

A warning similar to the one issued in 1.9.4 is due: do not confuse $\rho \Rightarrow \sigma$ with $\rho \Rightarrow \sigma$.

1.9.8 The canonical preorder on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$

Since Conditional \Rightarrow is a *preorder* relation on the set of statements, the induced relation \Rightarrow is a preorder relation. It is not only a canonical preorder on the set of relations, it is, in fact, a vital part of any reasoning process. Any form of rigorous reasoning employs the implication relation.

1.9.9 Terminology: *implies, is weaker than, is stronger than*

Given two relations $\rho, \sigma \in \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ such that

$$\rho \Rightarrow \sigma, \quad (57)$$

we shall say that ρ *implies* σ or that ρ is *weaker* than σ . In that case we shall σ is *stronger* than ρ .

The terms “weaker” and “stronger” is not an ideal terminology: ρ is both weaker and stronger than σ precisely when ρ and σ are *equipotent*, not equal.

1.9.10

The implication preorder induces a canonical order relation on the set of equipotence classes of relations and canonical correspondence (56) *identifies* that set with the set of $\{\top, \perp\}$ -valued functions equipped with the order relation induced by the order relation on $\{\top, \perp\}$ such that \top is *greater* than \perp .

Lemma 1.4 Any transitive relation on the set of statements that is stronger than \Leftrightarrow is equipotent to

$$\Leftrightarrow, \quad \Rightarrow, \quad \Leftarrow, \quad (58)$$

or is a total relation.

Proof. Transitivity of ρ means that

$$\forall_{P, Q, R \in \text{Statements}} \rho(P, Q) \wedge \rho(Q, R) \Rightarrow \rho(P, R).$$

It follows that a transitive relation stronger than \Leftrightarrow has the properties

$$\forall_{P, P', Q \in \text{Statements}} P \Leftrightarrow P' \wedge \rho(P, Q) \Rightarrow \rho(P', Q)$$

and

$$\forall_{P, Q, Q' \in \text{Statements}} \rho(P, Q) \wedge Q \Leftrightarrow Q' \Rightarrow \rho(P, Q')$$

which, in view of *symmetry* of relation \Leftrightarrow , imply the stronger properties

$$\forall_{P, P', Q \in \text{Statements}} P \Leftrightarrow P' \Rightarrow (\rho(P, Q) \Leftrightarrow \rho(P', Q)) \quad (59)$$

and

$$\forall_{P, Q, Q' \in \text{Statements}} Q \Leftrightarrow Q' \Rightarrow (\rho(P, Q) \Leftrightarrow \rho(P, Q')). \quad (60)$$

It follows that ρ defines a binary operation $\cdot_\rho \in \text{Op}_2\{\top, \perp\}$,

$$T_1 \cdot_\rho T_2 := \begin{cases} \top & \text{if } \rho(P_1, P_2) \text{ for any } P_1 \in T_1 \text{ and } P_2 \in T_2 \\ \perp & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where $T_1, T_2 \in \{\top, \perp\}$.

Since ρ is stronger than \Leftrightarrow , one has $T_1 \cdot_\rho T_2 = \top$ whenever $T_1 = T_2$. This leaves four possibilities

$\top \cdot \perp = \perp \cdot \top = \perp$ In this case ρ is equipotent to \Leftrightarrow .

$\top \cdot \perp = \perp \cdot \top = \top$ In this case ρ is a total relation ,

$\top \cdot \perp = \perp \wedge \perp \cdot \top = \top$ In this case ρ is equipotent to \Rightarrow .

$\top \cdot \perp = \top \wedge \perp \cdot \top = \perp$ In this case ρ is equipotent to \Leftarrow .

□

1.10 Functions of n variables viewed as $(n + 1)$ -ary relations

1.10.1

Given sets X_1, \dots, X_n and Y , and a function of n variables

$$f : X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow Y, \quad (61)$$

we can associate with it an $(n + 1)$ -ary relation

$$\rho_f : X_1, \dots, X_n, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x_1, \dots, x_n, y \mapsto "f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = y" . \quad (62)$$

Functions corresponding to reflexive relations

1.10.2

The $(n + 1)$ -ary relation ρ_f has the following property :

$$\text{for every list of elements } x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_n \in X_n, \text{ there} \\ \text{exists a unique } y \in Y, \text{ such that } \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n, y) . \quad (63)$$

1.10.3

Given any $(n + 1)$ -ary relation satisfying property (63), we can define a function (61) where $f(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ is defined to be that unique element $y \in Y$ such that

$$\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n, y) .$$

Let us denote this function f_ρ .

Exercise 10 Show that $f_\rho = f_\sigma$ if and only if ρ and σ are equipotent.

1.11 Composing relations

1.11.1

Suppose that two relations are given,

an $(m + 1)$ -ary relation between elements of sets X_0, \dots, X_m ,

denoted σ , and

an $(n + 1)$ -ary relation between elements of sets X_m, \dots, X_{m+n+1} ,

denoted ρ . Assigning to a list $x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_m, \dots, x_{m+n+1}$ the statement

$$\text{there exists } x_m \in X_m \text{ such that } \sigma(x_1, \dots, x_m) \text{ and } \rho(x_m, \dots, x_{m+n+1}) \quad (64)$$

defines an $(m + n + 1)$ -ary relation between elements of sets

$$X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_m, \dots, X_{m+n+1}.$$

Symbolically, statement (64) is represented

$$\exists_{x_m \in X_m} (\sigma(x_1, \dots, x_m) \wedge \rho(x_m, \dots, x_{m+n+1})).$$

1.11.2

We call the relation defined above, the *composite of ρ and σ* and denote it $\rho \circ \sigma$.

1.12 Cartesian product $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$

1.12.1

Given a list of sets X_1, \dots, X_n , let us form its Cartesian product

$$X_1 \times \dots \times X_n. \quad (65)$$

By definition, its elements are ordered n -tuples (x_1, \dots, x_n) of elements $x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_n \in X_n$.

1.12.2 The concept of an ordered n -tuple

What is an ordered n -tuple? There is not much difference between lists of length n and ordered n -tuples. When we speak of an ordered n -tuple, we always think of it being a *single* entity, while when we speak of a list of length n , we think of n separate entities.

1.12.3

To illustrate this further, the assignment

$$x, y \mapsto x + y \quad (x, y \in \mathbf{N})$$

defines a function of 2 variables on the set of natural numbers \mathbf{N} , while the assignment

$$(x, y) \mapsto x + y \quad (x, y \in \mathbf{N})$$

defines a function of a single variable on the Cartesian square $\mathbf{N} \times \mathbf{N}$ of \mathbf{N} . The targets of both functions are the same, namely the set of natural numbers.

1.12.4 The equality principle

The principal property built into the concept of an ordered n -tuple is the following equality principle

$$(x_1, \dots, x_m) = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$$

if and only if $m = n$ and $x_i = y_i$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n$.

1.12.5 The standard set-theoretic model of an ordered pair

The actual model of an ordered n -tuple is of little importance. It is possible to prove existence of such a model using only basic set theoretic concepts. For example, the axiom of Set Theory called Axiom of a Pair states that, for any x and y , the set $\{x, y\}$, whose elements are x and y , exists. Thus, $\{x\} = \{x, x\}$ and $\{x, y\}$ exist and therefore also the following set

$$\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} \quad (66)$$

exists. This set is a model of an *ordered pair*, i.e., of an ordered a 2-tuple.

Exercise 11 Show that

$$\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} = \{\{x'\}, \{x', y'\}\}$$

if and only if $x = x'$ and $y = y'$.

1.12.6

If $x \in X$ and $y \in Y$, then (66) is a *family* of subsets of $X \cup Y$, i.e., it is a subset of the power-set of $X \cup Y$,

$$\{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} \subseteq \mathcal{P}(X \cup Y).$$

Accordingly, the Cartesian product $X \times Y$ is realized as the appropriate subset of the power-set of the power-set of $X \cup Y$,

$$X \times Y := \{ P \in \mathcal{P}(\mathcal{P}(X \cup Y)) \mid \exists_{x \in X} \exists_{y \in Y} P = \{\{x\}, \{x, y\}\} \},$$

which demonstrates its existence.

1.12.7

Having a model of on ordered pair, the ordered pair

$$((x, y), z)$$

becomes a model of an ordered triple and the Cartesian product

$$(X \times Y) \times Z$$

becomes a model of $X \times Y \times Z$. By induction on n , one can construct a model of an ordered n -tuple

$$(x_1, \dots, x_n)$$

and of

$$X_1 \times \dots \times X_n,$$

There are other, more convenient models.

1.12.8 An ordered n -tuple as a function

A convenient model of an ordered n -tuple (x_1, \dots, x_n) is provided by a function

$$\xi : \{1, \dots, n\} \longrightarrow X_1 \cup \dots \cup X_n \quad (67)$$

whose value at i is, for every $1 \leq i \leq n$, an element of X_i .

In this model, the Cartesian product $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ is represented as a subset of the set of all functions (67).

1.12.9 Universal functions of n -variables

We shall say that a function

$$\tau : X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow T \quad (68)$$

is a *universal* function with the domain-list X_1, \dots, X_n , if *every* function (5) can be produced from τ by postcomposing τ with a *unique* function $\tilde{f} : T \rightarrow Y$,

$$f = \tilde{f} \circ \tau.$$

In that case, the bijective correspondence

$$\text{Func}(X_1, \dots, X_n; Y) \longleftrightarrow \text{Func}(T, Y), \quad f \longleftrightarrow \tilde{f}, \quad (69)$$

identifies the set of Y -valued functions of n -variables, with the domain-list X_1, \dots, X_n , with the set of functions of a single variable $T \rightarrow Y$.

1.12.10 The canonical function of n -variables $X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$

For every list of sets X_1, \dots, X_n , there exists a canonical function of n -variables with that list as its domain. It assigns to an argument list x_1, \dots, x_n the corresponding ordered n -tuple,

$$X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow X_1 \times \dots \times X_n, \quad x_1, \dots, x_n \longmapsto (x_1, \dots, x_n), \quad (70)$$

1.12.11

The canonical function has the universal property defined in Section 1.12.9. Indeed,

$$f \longmapsto (\tilde{f} : X_1 \times \dots \times X_n \rightarrow Y, \quad (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto f(x_1, \dots, x_n))$$

is a bijective correspondence and f is produced by postcomposing function (70) with \tilde{f} .

1.12.12 The case of functions of zero variables

When $n = 0$, Cartesian product of the empty list of sets consists of functions from the *empty* set of natural numbers to the union of the empty family of sets. The latter, as we already know, is the empty set. In other words, Cartesian product of the empty list of sets is the set of functions

$$\emptyset^\emptyset = \text{Func}(\emptyset, \emptyset) = \{\text{id}_\emptyset\}, \quad (71)$$

and that set has a unique element, namely the identity function associated with the empty set. Exponential notation \emptyset^\emptyset , cf. (8) is particularly apt in this case. We observe that foundations of Set Theory themselves are telling us that 0^0 is well defined and equals to 1.

1.12.13 Canonical identification $\mathbf{Op}_o(Y) \longleftrightarrow \mathbf{Func}(\emptyset^\emptyset, Y)$

In particular, nullary operations on a set Y , i.e., Y -valued functions of zero of variables, are canonically identified with functions $\emptyset^\emptyset \rightarrow Y$.

1.12.14

Every statement containing references to functions of n -variables can be now replaced by an equivalent statement containing references exclusively to functions of a single variable.

This explains why the use of the concept of a function of n -variables has practically disappeared from modern mathematical language. This is also the reason why Cartesian product is today present everywhere where normally one would be mentioning functions of n -variables: Cartesian product

$$X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$$

is the *target* of the universal function of n -variables (70).

1.12.15 Canonical projections $(\pi_i)_{i \in \{1, \dots, n\}}$

The Cartesian product is more than just a set, it is a *mathematical structure*, like a relation or a function. One should consider the Cartesian product to consist of a set $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ equipped with a list of functions

$$\pi_1, \dots, \pi_n, \quad (72)$$

called the *canonical projections*, where π_i is defined as

$$\pi_i : X_1 \times \dots \times X_n \longrightarrow X_i, \quad (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto x_i. \quad (73)$$

Having just set $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ alone would not suffice to recover the list of sets X_1, \dots, X_n . For example, $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ is the empty set whenever at least one set X_i is empty.

1.12.16 Naturality of Cartesian product

Cartesian product assigns to a list of sets X_1, \dots, X_n a single set $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ equipped with the list of functions π_1, \dots, π_n . A function-list

$$X_1 \xrightarrow{f_1} X'_1, \dots, X_n \xrightarrow{f_n} X'_n, \quad (74)$$

induces a function between the corresponding Cartesian-product sets

$$f_1 \times \dots \times f_n : X_1 \times \dots \times X_n \longrightarrow X'_1 \times \dots \times X'_n, \quad (x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto (f_1(x_1), \dots, f_n(x_n)). \quad (75)$$

Moreover, the assignment

$$f_1, \dots, f_n \mapsto f_1 \times \dots \times f_n$$

commutes with the operations of function composition.

Exercise 12 Given a function-list

$$X'_1 \xrightarrow{f'_1} X''_1, \dots, X'_n \xrightarrow{f'_n} X''_n,$$

show that

$$(f'_1 \times \dots \times f'_n) \circ (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n) = (f'_1 \circ f_1, \dots, f'_n \circ f_n).$$

Mathematicians refer to such behavior as *naturality* of the assignment

$$X_1, \dots, X_n \mapsto X_1 \times \dots \times X_n.$$

1.12.17 The graph of a relation

Given a relation ρ between elements of sets X_1, \dots, X_n , the following subset of the Cartesian product,

$$\Gamma_\rho := \{(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in X_1 \times \dots \times X_n \mid \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n)\} \quad (76)$$

is guaranteed to exist by the axioms of Set Theory. This is the set of those ordered n -tuples for which statement $\rho(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ holds. One calls it the *graph* of ρ .

Exercise 13 Let ρ and σ be two relations between elements of sets X_1, \dots, X_n . Show that ρ is weaker than σ if and only if

$$\Gamma_\rho \subseteq \Gamma_\sigma.$$

1.12.18

In particular, relations ρ and σ are equipotent if and only if their graphs are equal

$$\Gamma_\rho = \Gamma_\sigma.$$

1.12.19 Correspondences

The graph of a relation provides another example of a mathematical structure. It involves the list of the following data:

- a list of sets X_1, \dots, X_n ,
- a subset $C \subseteq X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$.

Having just the set C alone would not suffice to recover the list of sets X_1, \dots, X_n .

A structure of this kind begs for a name. I propose to call it a *correspondence between elements of sets* X_1, \dots, X_n or, an *n -correspondence*, in short.

1.12.20

When all sets X_i are one and the same set X , we shall speak of *n -correspondences on X* .

1.12.21 1-correspondences

In particular, 1-correspondences on X are the same as *subsets* of X .

1.12.22

In practice, we still be denoting a correspondence by the symbol denoting the subset C of $X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$.

1.12.23 Caveat

In fact, a common practice among mathematicians is to call precisely this structure a *relation*. This approach to the concept of a relation, while being much less intuitive than the ‘statements-valued function’ approach, it allows one to place theory of relations entirely within the realm of Set Theory. For example, relations with a given domain (1) form a well defined set.

1.12.24

The main advantage of such a restrictive notion of a relation is that it frees a mathematician from any concerns about what is and what is not a *statement* while still being sufficient for studying the whole of Mathematics.

Indeed, given a correspondence C between elements of sets X_1, \dots, X_n , let $\rho_C(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ be the statement

$$(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in C .$$

This defines a relation between elements of sets X_1, \dots, X_n .

Exercise 14 Show that any relation ρ is equipotent to the relation ρ_{Γ_ρ} .

Exercise 15 Show that, for any correspondence C , one has $C = \Gamma_{\rho_C}$.

1.12.25

We shall express the operations on relations, introduced in Sections 1.7.5–1.8, in terms of their graph correspondences. For this we need to introduce some notation.

Exercise 16 Given a relation ρ , show that

$$\Gamma_{\neg \rho} = \complement \Gamma_\rho . \quad (77)$$

Exercise 17 Given relations ρ and σ with the same domain, show that

$$\Gamma_{\rho \vee \sigma} = \Gamma_\rho \cup \Gamma_\sigma \quad \text{and} \quad \Gamma_{\rho \wedge \sigma} = \Gamma_\rho \cap \Gamma_\sigma . \quad (78)$$

1.12.26

The above two exercises demonstrate that the operations of negation, alternative and conjunction of relations translate into the operations of taking the complement, the union, and the intersection, of correspondences.

Exercise 18 Given relations ρ and σ with the same domain, show that

$$\Gamma_{\rho \Rightarrow \sigma} = \complement \Gamma_\rho \cup \Gamma_\sigma . \quad (79)$$

1.12.27 The function-list canonically associated with an n -correspondence

By post-composing the canonical inclusion $\iota : C \hookrightarrow X_1 \times \dots \times X_n$ with the list of canonical projections π_1, \dots, π_n , we obtain a list of functions

$$\begin{array}{c} C \\ \begin{array}{c} \downarrow \partial_1 \quad \dots \quad \downarrow \partial_n \end{array} \\ X_1, \dots, X_n \end{array} \quad (80)$$

that is canonically associated with the correspondence. Here $\partial_i := \pi_i \circ \iota$, $1 \leq i \leq n$.

1.12.28 Oriented graphs

When $n = 2$ and X_1 and X_2 are the same set X , a list (80) is called an *oriented graph*. Elements of X are referred to, in this case, as *vertices* and elements of C are referred as *oriented edges*, or *arrows*, of the graph.

1.12.29 2-Correspondences as oriented graphs

In particular, 2-correspondences on a set X can be viewed as oriented graphs with vertices being elements of X , such that no two oriented edges have the same source and the same target.

1.13 The language of diagrams

1.13.1

Situations involving several functions are frequently expressed and analyzed in the language of oriented graphs, represented visually as diagrams drawn on a blackboard, or on a page. Arrows in a diagram represent functions. Vertices represent their domains and targets. *Oriented paths* in such graphs represent composable lists of functions.

1.13.2 Commutative diagrams

When composition of two paths with the same origin and the same terminus produces the same result, we call such a diagram *commutative*. Most common examples of commutative diagrams have a form of a *commutative square*,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xleftarrow{\beta} & S \\ \alpha \downarrow & \curvearrowright & \downarrow \delta \\ T & \xleftarrow{\gamma} & Y \end{array} \quad (81)$$

Commutativity of square diagram (81) expresses the equality

$$\alpha \circ \beta = \gamma \circ \delta.$$

1.13.3

Commutativity of a diagram is often signaled by placing a symbol \curvearrowright , or its cousins: \mathcal{C} , \mathcal{U} , or \mathcal{V} , between two composable paths of arrows originating and terminating in a common vertex.

1.13.4

Diagrams are employed not only to illustrate situations that can be discussed without introducing diagrams. It has been long observed that employing diagrams can greatly clarify and enhance analysis of complex scenarios. We shall illustrate it here by considering one example. Later in these notes you will see many more appearances of commutative diagrams.

1.13.5 An example

Consider a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z_1 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_1} & Y_1 & \xleftarrow{\chi_1} & X_1 \\ \alpha \downarrow & & \circlearrowleft & & \downarrow \gamma \\ Z_2 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_2} & Y_2 & \xleftarrow{\chi_2} & X_2 \end{array} . \quad (82)$$

We do not know whether it is possible to complete diagram (82) to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z_1 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_1} & Y_1 & \xleftarrow{\chi_1} & X_1 \\ \alpha \downarrow & \circlearrowleft & \downarrow \beta & \circlearrowleft & \downarrow \gamma \\ Z_2 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_2} & Y_2 & \xleftarrow{\chi_2} & X_2 \end{array} , \quad (83)$$

we observe, however, that diagram (82) defines in a canonical manner a binary relation between elements of Y_1 and Y_2 ,

$$\rho : Y_1, Y_2 \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad y_1, y_2 \longmapsto " \exists_{x_1 \in X_1} y_1 = \chi_1(x_1) \wedge y_2 = (\chi_2 \circ \gamma)(x_1) ". \quad (84)$$

1.13.6

It is clear that

$$\forall_{y_1 \in Y_1} \exists_{y_2 \in Y_2} \rho(y_1, y_2)$$

if and only if function χ_1 is surjective.

1.13.7

Let $y_2, y'_2 \in Y_2$ be two elements in relation with a given element $y_1 \in Y_1$. Then, there are elements $x_1, x'_1 \in X_1$ such that

$$y_1 = \chi_1(x_1) = \chi_1(x'_1), \quad y_2 = (\chi_2 \circ \gamma)(x_1) \quad \text{and} \quad y'_2 = (\chi_2 \circ \gamma)(x'_1).$$

By combining this with commutativity of diagram (82) we obtain a chain of equalities

$$\varphi_2(y_2) = (\varphi_2 \circ \chi_2 \circ \gamma)(x_1) = (\alpha \circ \varphi_1)(\chi_1(x_1)) = (\alpha \circ \varphi_1)(\chi_1(x'_1)) = (\varphi_2 \circ \chi_2 \circ \gamma)(x'_1) = \varphi_2(y'_2).$$

If φ_2 is injective, then $y_2 = y'_2$ and relation (84) defines a function

$$\beta : Y_1 \longrightarrow Y_2, \quad y_1 \longmapsto \text{the unique } y_2 \in Y_2 \text{ such that } \rho(y_1, y_2).$$

1.13.8 Diagram chasing

The method we used to construct relation (84) and then to prove that under suitable hypotheses (84) defines a function, is referred to as *diagram chasing*.

1.13.9

Let us represent surjective functions by two-headed arrows \rightarrow and injective functions by tailed arrows \rightarrowtail . We established the following fact.

Lemma 1.5 *Every commutative diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Z_1 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_1} & Y_1 & \xleftarrow{\chi_1} & X_1 \\
 \alpha \downarrow & & & \circlearrowleft & \downarrow \gamma \\
 Z_2 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_2} & Y_2 & \xleftarrow{\chi_2} & X_2
 \end{array} . \quad (85)$$

admits a completion to a commutative diagram (83). Moreover, function β that makes diagram (83) commutative is unique. \square

Exercise 19 *Prove uniqueness of β .*

1.13.10

Consider now an arbitrary commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Z_1 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_1} & Y_1 & \xleftarrow{\chi_1} & X_1 \\
 \alpha \downarrow & & \circlearrowleft & \downarrow \beta & \\
 Z_2 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_2} & Y_2 & \xleftarrow{\chi_2} & X_2
 \end{array} . \quad (86)$$

If arrow χ_2 admits a right inverse $\xi : Y_2 \rightarrow X_2$, then

$$\gamma := \xi \circ \beta \circ \chi_1$$

obviously makes the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Z_1 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_1} & Y_1 & \xleftarrow{\chi_1} & X_1 \\
 \alpha \downarrow & & \circlearrowleft & \downarrow \beta & \circlearrowleft \downarrow \gamma \\
 Z_2 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_2} & Y_2 & \xleftarrow{\chi_2} & X_2
 \end{array}$$

commute.

1.13.11

We can sum our discussion up in the following lemma.

Lemma 1.6 Consider a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z_1 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_1} & Y_1 & \xleftarrow{\chi_1} & X_1 \\ \alpha \downarrow & & & & \\ Z_2 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_2} & Y_2 & \xleftarrow{\chi_2} & X_2 \end{array} \quad (87)$$

The following three properties of diagram (87) are equivalent :

- (a) it admits a completion to a commutative diagram (82);
- (b) it admits a completion to a commutative diagram (86).
- (c) it admits a completion to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} Z_1 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_1} & Y_1 & \xleftarrow{\chi_1} & X_1 \\ \alpha \downarrow & \curvearrowright & \downarrow \beta & \curvearrowright & \downarrow \gamma \\ Z_2 & \xleftarrow{\varphi_2} & Y_2 & \xleftarrow{\chi_2} & X_2 \end{array} \quad (88)$$

Implications (b) \Rightarrow (c) and (b) \Rightarrow (a) rely on Axiom of Choice, cf. Section 1.15.14, or one has to add the hypothesis to the effect that χ_2 has a right inverse (such functions are said to be *split surjections*).

1.13.12 \sim -commutative diagrams

A \sim -commutative diagram is a slight yet a very significant generalization of a commutative diagram, cf. 1.13.2. Whole areas of advanced modern Mathematics and Mathematical Physics are devoted to studying phenomena expressed in the language of \sim -commutative diagrams.

Commutativity of a diagram means that two composable paths of arrows (representating functions between sets), that have a common source and a common target, are equal. If that common target, call it T , is equipped with a binary relation \sim , then *equality* may be replaced by the condition that the corresponding composite functions satisfy the relation induced by \sim on the set of T -valued functions.

Since \sim is not necessarily symmetric, one needs to indicate which composite function appears as the *left* argument and which appears as the *right* argument of the relation in question.

This can be represented in a diagram by placing a small arrow (ideally, a bent arrow) near the common target of two composable paths of arrows, as is shown in the following simple example. A square-shaped diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xleftarrow{\varphi} & S \\ v \downarrow & \curvearrowright & \downarrow \psi \\ T & \xleftarrow{\chi} & Y \end{array}$$

expresses the statement

$$\forall_{s \in S} \chi(\psi(s)) \sim v(\phi(s)),$$

i.e., the composite arrow $\chi \circ \psi$ is in relation, induced by \sim , with the composite arrow $v \circ \phi$.

When the binary relation on the target is clear from the context, the label (\sim here) may be omitted.

1.14 Power-set functions induced by a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$

1.14.1 The *image-of-a-subset* and the *preimage-of-a-subset* functions f_* and f^*

Given a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$, there are two associated functions between the power-sets

$$\mathcal{P}X \xrightleftharpoons[f_*]{f^*} \mathcal{P}Y, \quad (89)$$

where the associated *image* function is defined by

$$f_*(A) := \{y \in Y \mid \exists_{x \in A} f(x) = y\} \quad (A \subseteq X) \quad (90)$$

and the associated *preimage* function is defined by

$$f^*(B) := \{x \in X \mid \exists_{y \in B} f(x) = y\} \quad (B \subseteq Y). \quad (91)$$

1.14.2 A comment about notation

What I here denote by $f_*(A)$ and $f^*(B)$ is usually denoted $f(A)$ and $f^{-1}(B)$. This is all right as long as there is no need to consider the assignments

$$A \mapsto f(A) \quad \text{and} \quad B \mapsto f^{-1}(B)$$

as functions between the corresponding power-sets. When such a need arises, one needs an appropriate notation to denote the image and the preimage functions associated with f . This is why I adopted the *lower-* and the *upper-star* notation that is universally used in Modern Mathematics to denote all sorts of functions that are naturally associated with a given function.

1.14.3

This has yet another advantage: it often allows us to skip parentheses around the arguments of functions f_* and f^* in the interest of keeping notation as simple as possible, without affecting the intended meaning. Thus, we shall, generally, write f_*A and f^*B instead of $f_*(A)$ and $f^*(B)$.

1.14.4

I will say later why in some cases we mark the associated function by placing $*$ as a *subscript* while in other cases—as a *superscript*.

1.14.5 The fiber of a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ at $y \in Y$

The preimage f^*B of a singleton subset $B = \{y\}$ is referred to as the *fiber of f at y* . It is usually denoted $f^{-1}y$ or $f^{-1}(y)$. We shall denote it $f^*\{y\}$.

1.14.6 Caveat

One must be careful not to confuse notation $f^{-1}(y)$, when it is used to denote the *fiber* of f at y , with notation $f^{-1}(y)$ used to denote the *value* of the *inverse* function. The inverse function, denoted f^{-1} , is defined only when f is invertible. In that case, the fiber of f at $y \in Y$ is given by

$$f^*\{y\} = \{f^{-1}(y)\}.$$

1.14.7 The characteristic function of a subset

Given a subset $A \subset X$, its *characteristic function* is defined by

$$\chi_A : X \rightarrow \mathbf{F}_2, \quad \chi_A(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x \in A \\ 0 & \text{for } x \notin A \end{cases}, \quad (92)$$

where $\mathbf{F}_2 = \{0, 1\}$ denotes the 2-element field.

Assignment

$$A \mapsto \chi_A$$

yields a canonical identification

$$\chi : \mathcal{P}X \longleftrightarrow \text{Funct}(X, \mathbf{F}_2). \quad (93)$$

Exercise 20 Prove that, given a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and a subset $B \subset Y$, one has

$$f^*\chi_B = \chi_{f^*B}. \quad (94)$$

In other words, the preimage function $f^* : \mathcal{P}Y \rightarrow \mathcal{P}X$ can be viewed also as the precomposition function

$$f^* : \text{Funct}(Y, \mathbf{F}_2) \longrightarrow \text{Funct}(X, \mathbf{F}_2).$$

1.14.8

Identity (94) can be also expressed by saying that the following square diagram of functions

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X & \xrightarrow{\chi} & \text{Funct}(X, \mathbf{F}_2) \\ f^* \uparrow & & \uparrow f^* \\ \mathcal{P}Y & \xrightarrow{\chi} & \text{Funct}(Y, \mathbf{F}_2) \end{array}$$

commutes.

1.14.9

Note how close the definitions of the image and of the preimage are to each other: they are both defined by *existential* quantification of the *same* binary relation

$$X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x, y \longmapsto \rho(x, y) := "f(x) = y" \quad (95)$$

over the corresponding subsets $A \subseteq X$ and $B \subseteq Y$, respectively. We often refer to f_* as the *direct image map* and to f^* as the *inverse image map*.

1.14.10 A remark about terminology: a *map*, a *mapping*

The term *map* is very frequently employed today as an alternative term for *function*. This use became established among Mathematical Analysts who preferred to reserve the term ‘function’ for real or complex-valued functions. The word *map* is an abbreviated form of the word *mapping*, which is a calque from German word *Abbildung*, introduced early in the 20th Century by topologists, writing in German, to denote functions between spaces of real or complex-valued functions, and between more general spaces.

1.14.11 Comments about the usual “definitions” of the image and the preimage functions.

The image function is usually “defined” by

$$f_*A := \{f(x) \mid x \in A\}. \quad (96)$$

This should be considered only as an *informal definition* since it violates the requirement that brace notation we use to define a subset of Y *must* be of the form

$$\{y \in Y \mid \rho(y)\}$$

where ρ is a unary relation on Y . Additionally, note the equality of sets

$$f^*B = \{x \in X \mid f(x) \in B\}. \quad (97)$$

The right-hand-side of (97) is how the inverse image is usually defined. Such a definition, however, obfuscates the fact that f^* is a “twin sister of f_* ”.

1.14.12 The *conjugate image function* $f_!$

These two concepts or, if you wish, constructions, naturally associated with every function $f : X \longrightarrow Y$, are omnipresent. One encounters them nearly in every mathematical argument involving functions between sets. What remains a very little known fact is that f^* has yet another “sibling,”

$$f_! : \mathcal{P}(X) \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}(Y), \quad A \longmapsto \mathbb{C}f_*(\mathbb{C}A), \quad (98)$$

that I propose to call the *conjugate image function*.

The name, “conjugate image” stems from the fact that $f_!$ is the *conjugate* of f_* by the *complement operation*,

$$f_! = \mathbb{C} \circ f_* \circ \mathbb{C}. \quad (99)$$

Caveat: the *inner* complement operation is applied to a subset of X whereas the *outer* complement operation is applied to a subset of Y . When fully expanded the value of $f_!$ on a subset A of X equals

$$f_!A = Y \setminus f_*(X \setminus A).$$

Exercise 21 Show that

$$f_!A = \{y \in Y \mid \forall_{x \in X} f(x)=y \Rightarrow x \in A\}. \quad (100)$$

Exercise 22 Let $A \subseteq X$ and $B \subseteq Y$. Show that

$$A \subseteq f^*B \quad \text{if and only if} \quad f_*A \subseteq B. \quad (101)$$

1.14.13

Exercise 22 expresses the fact that f_*, f^* form what in the language of ordered sets is known as a *Galois connection*, cf. Section 6.15.

Exercise 23 Show that

$$f^* \circ f_* = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}X} \quad \text{if and only if} \quad f \text{ is injective}. \quad (102)$$

Exercise 24 Show that

$$f_* \circ f^* = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}Y} \quad \text{if and only if} \quad f \text{ is surjective}. \quad (103)$$

Exercise 25 Show that

$$f^*(\complement B) = \complement(f_*B). \quad (104)$$

1.14.14

Identities (99) and (104) can be expressed by a pair of commutative square diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{\complement} & \mathcal{P}X \\ f_* \downarrow & \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowright} & \downarrow f_! \\ \mathcal{P}Y & \xleftarrow{\complement} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{\complement} & \mathcal{P}X \\ f^* \uparrow & \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowleft} & \uparrow f^* \\ \mathcal{P}Y & \xleftarrow{\complement} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (105)$$

that can be combined into a single diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{\complement} & \mathcal{P}X \\ f_* \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow f^* \\ \downarrow f_! \end{array} \right) \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowleft} \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowright} \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow f^* \\ \downarrow f_! \end{array} \right) & & \\ \mathcal{P}Y & \xleftarrow{\complement} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (106)$$

in which both squares commute.

1.14.15

I used two different circle-arrows to make you aware that in the left diagram in (105), the composite arrows have their source at one of the *top* vertices and their target in the diagonally opposite *bottom* vertex. In the right diagram in (105) the roles are reversed: the composite arrows have their source at one of the *bottom* vertices and their target in the diagonally opposite *top* vertex.

Normally, I will be marking commutativity of any (portion of a) diagram by using the circle-arrow symbol that I consider the most appropriate.

Exercise 26 Show that

$$f^*B \subseteq A \quad \text{if and only if} \quad B \subseteq f_!A. \quad (107)$$

1.14.16

Exercise 26 expresses the fact that $f^*, f_!$ form what in the language of ordered sets is known as a *Galois connection*.

Exercise 27 Given an n -ary relation ρ between elements of sets X_1, \dots, X_n , let ρ_i be the $(n-1)$ -ary relation between elements of sets $X_1, \dots, \hat{X}_i, \dots, X_n$ defined in Section 1.8.6. Show that

$$\Gamma_{\rho_i} = (\pi_i)_* \Gamma_\rho \quad (108)$$

where

$$\pi_i : X_1 \times \dots \times X_n \longrightarrow X_1 \times \dots \times \hat{X}_i \times \dots \times X_n \quad (109)$$

removes from an ordered n -tuple its i -th component,

$$(x_1, \dots, x_n) \mapsto (x_1, \dots, \hat{x}_i, \dots, x_n).$$

Exercise 28 Let $g : Y \rightarrow Z$ be a function. Show that

$$(g \circ f)_* = g_* \circ f_*, \quad (g \circ f)^* = f^* \circ g^* \quad \text{and} \quad (g \circ f)_! = g_! \circ f_!. \quad (110)$$

Exercise 29 Show that all three functions

$$(id_X)_*, \quad (id_X)^* \quad \text{and} \quad (id_X)_!, \quad (111)$$

are equal to the identity function $id_{\mathcal{P}X}$ of power-set $\mathcal{P}X$.

An immediate consequence of identities (110) and (111) is that, for every invertible function f , one has

$$(f^{-1})_* = (f_*)^{-1}. \quad (112)$$

Exercise 30 Show that, for an invertible function f , one has

$$f^* = (f^{-1})_*.$$

Exercise 31 Let ρ^i be the $(n-1)$ -ary relation defined in Section 1.8.1. Show that

$$\Gamma_{\rho^i} = (\pi_i)_! \Gamma_\rho. \quad (113)$$

1.14.17 Pull-back of a relation

Given a function-list (74), we refer to the associated precomposition functions

$$(f_1, \dots, f_n)^* : \text{Rel}(X'_1, \dots, X'_n) \longrightarrow \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n), \quad \rho' \longmapsto (f_1, \dots, f_n)^* \rho'. \quad (114)$$

as the *pull-back* functions.

Exercise 32 Show that

$$\Gamma_{(f_1, \dots, f_n)^* \rho} = (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)^* \Gamma_{\rho}. \quad (115)$$

Exercise 33 Let $f : X \rightarrow X'$ be a function and ρ' be a binary relation on X' . Which properties of ρ' , from the list given in Section 1.4.4, are inherited by $(f, f)^* \rho'$?

1.14.18 Push-forward of a relation

We define the *push-forward* functions

$$(f_1, \dots, f_n)_\# : \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n) \longrightarrow \text{Rel}(X'_1, \dots, X'_n), \quad \rho \longmapsto (f_1, \dots, f_n)_\# \rho, \quad (116)$$

where $(f_1, \dots, f_n)_\# \rho$ is the relation

$$x'_1, \dots, x'_n \longmapsto " \exists_{x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_n \in X_n} \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) \wedge f_1(x_1) = x'_1 \wedge \dots \wedge f_n(x_n) = x'_n ". \quad (117)$$

Exercise 34 Show that

$$\Gamma_{(f_1, \dots, f_n)_\# \rho} = (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)_* \Gamma_\rho. \quad (118)$$

1.14.19

The analog of Identity (118),

$$\Gamma_{(f_1, \dots, f_n)_! \rho} = (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)_! \Gamma_\rho, \quad (119)$$

exists also for the *conjugate* direct image function and *conjugate push-forward* functions

$$(f_1, \dots, f_n)_\natural : \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n) \longrightarrow \text{Rel}(X'_1, \dots, X'_n), \quad \rho \longmapsto (f_1, \dots, f_n)_\natural \rho, \quad (120)$$

where $(f_1, \dots, f_n)_\natural \rho$ is the relation

$$x'_1, \dots, x'_n \longmapsto " \forall_{x_1 \in X_1, \dots, x_n \in X_n} (f_1(x_1) = x'_1 \wedge \dots \wedge f_n(x_n) = x'_n) \Rightarrow \rho(x_1, \dots, x_n) ". \quad (121)$$

Exercise 35 Prove Identity (119).

1.15 Families of sets

1.15.1

A *family of sets* is, by definition, a set whose elements are themselves sets. In a restrictive approach to Set Theory every set is required to be of this form. It is possible to develop all of Mathematics within such a restrictive framework.

1.15.2 Notation

A general practice is to denote *elements* of sets by lower case Latin alphabet letters :

$$a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z,$$

and to denote *sets* by capital letters :

$$A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, W, X, Y, Z.$$

1.15.3 Families of sets

A set whose elements are sets is often referred to as a *family of sets*. We shall denote families of sets by capital calligraphic letters :

$$\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{B}, \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}, \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{F}, \mathcal{G}, \mathcal{H}, \mathcal{I}, \mathcal{J}, \mathcal{K}, \mathcal{L}, \mathcal{M}, \mathcal{O}, \mathcal{P}, \mathcal{Q}, \mathcal{R}, \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{T}, \mathcal{U}, \mathcal{V}, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{Z}.$$

1.15.4 The union of a family of subsets of a set

Given a family of subsets \mathcal{A} of a set X , the *union of \mathcal{A}* is the set

$$\bigcup \mathcal{A} := \{x \in X \mid \exists_{A \in \mathcal{A}} x \in A\}. \quad (122)$$

The existence of such a set is guaranteed by the axioms of Set Theory. It is the *smallest* subset of X *containing* each member set $A \in \mathcal{A}$. An alternative notation :

$$\bigcup_{x \in \mathcal{A}} A. \quad (123)$$

1.15.5 The intersection of a family of subsets of a set

The set

$$\bigcap \mathcal{A} := \{x \in X \mid \forall_{A \in \mathcal{A}} x \in A\} \quad (124)$$

is called the *intersection of (family) \mathcal{A}* . It is the *greatest* subset of X *contained in* each member set $A \in \mathcal{A}$. An alternative notation

$$\bigcap_{x \in X} A. \quad (125)$$

1.15.6

Union and intersection define two canonical functions

$$\mathcal{P}X \xrightleftharpoons[\cap]{\cup} \mathcal{P}\mathcal{P}X. \quad (126)$$

Exercise 36 Let $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{B}$ (we say, in this case, that \mathcal{A} is a subfamily of \mathcal{B}). Show that

$$\bigcup \mathcal{A} \subseteq \bigcup \mathcal{B} \quad \text{and} \quad \bigcap \mathcal{A} \supseteq \bigcap \mathcal{B}. \quad (127)$$

1.15.7 Union and intersection of the *empty* family of subsets

If $\mathcal{A} = \{A\}$ consists of a single set A , then

$$\bigcup \mathcal{A} = A = \bigcap \mathcal{A}.$$

Since the empty family \emptyset of subsets of X is contained in every family of subsets, in particular in the singleton family $\{\emptyset\}$, the union of the empty family is contained in set \emptyset ,

$$\bigcup \emptyset \subseteq \bigcup \{\emptyset\} = \emptyset,$$

hence it is the empty set.

Since the empty family \emptyset of subsets of X is contained in the singleton family $\{X\}$, the intersection of the empty family of subsets of X contains set X ,

$$\bigcap \emptyset \supseteq \bigcap \{X\} = X,$$

hence it equals X .

1.15.8

The above argument demonstrates that the union of the empty family of subsets of X is the empty set independently of what set X is.

On the other hand, the intersection of the empty family of subsets of X equals X , hence it *does* depend on X .

1.15.9 Selectors of a family

A function $\xi : \mathcal{X} \longrightarrow \bigcup \mathcal{X}$ satisfying the property

$$\forall_{X \in \mathcal{X}} \xi(X) \in X \tag{128}$$

is called a *selector* or a *choice function* of family \mathcal{X} .

1.15.10 A comment about the use of the quantifier notation

Mathematicians, unless they are logicians or axiomatic-set-theorists, prefer to limit the use of the quantifier symbols in their formulae to those rare occasions when their use clarifies, not obfuscates, the meaning. The reason is partly a reflection of their habits, partly is related to the physiology of human brain perception of abstract symbolic expressions. The defining property of a selector (128) can be also written as:

$$\xi(X) \in X \text{ for every } X \in \mathcal{X}. \tag{129}$$

or, more tersely,

$$\xi(X) \in X \quad (X \in \mathcal{X}). \tag{130}$$

Each expression (128)–(130) carries exactly the same meaning and can be read in the same way. From now on you will be frequently exposed to notation (130) that eliminates the need to use quantifier symbols in phrases involving only universal quantifiers.

1.15.11 Axiom of Choice

For obvious reasons, no selector exists if family \mathcal{X} contains the empty set \emptyset . It is not obvious, however, that a selector exists *for every* family of nonempty sets. *Axiom of Choice* states just that. That statement was proven to be independent of other axioms of Set Theory. Some mathematicians do not accept it automatically while all mathematicians are, generally, cautious when they are forced to use it. Much of Mathematics can be developed without assuming its validity.

1.15.12 The product of a family of sets

The set of all selectors of family \mathcal{X} forms the set

$$\prod \mathcal{X}, \quad \text{alternately denoted} \quad \prod_{X \in \mathcal{X}} X, \quad (131)$$

which is called the *product* of (family) \mathcal{X} .

1.15.13

Axiom of Choice says :

$$\textit{The product of a family of nonempty sets is nonempty.} \quad (132)$$

1.15.14 An equivalent form of Axiom of Choice

$$\textit{Every surjective function } f : X \rightarrow Y \textit{ is right-invertible.} \quad (133)$$

1.15.15 Independence of Axiom of Choice

It was established long ago that Axiom of Choice is consistent with the remaining axioms of Set Theory. This means that if there are contradictory statements in Mathematics provable with the aid of Axiom of Choice, then there are contradictory statements provable without Axiom of Choice.

It took much longer to resolve the open question whether Axiom of Choice is, or is not, a consequence of the remaining axioms of Set Theory. This was finally resolved by a brilliant mathematician, Paul Cohen, whose demonstrated strength was in Harmonic and Functional Analysis, not in Set Theory or Mathematical Logic. He proved that Axiom of Choice is *not* a consequence of axioms of Set Theory. Statements in Mathematics that are consistent but not provable are said to be *independent* of axioms of Set Theory.

1.16 Canonical functions between the sets-of-families

1.16.1

As we saw in Sections 1.14.1 and 1.14.12, every function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ induces three functions between the corresponding power-sets

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \mathcal{P}Y & \\ f_* \swarrow & \updownarrow f^* & \searrow f_! \\ & \mathcal{P}X & \end{array} . \quad (134)$$

Families of subsets of X are elements of the power-set-of-the-power-set $\mathcal{P}\mathcal{P}X$ and similar for families of subsets of Y . In particular, each of the three functions in diagram (134) induces three functions between the corresponding sets of families of subsets :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (f_*)_* & (f_*)^* & (f_*)_! \\ (f^*)_* & (f^*)^* & (f^*)_! \\ (f_!)_* & (f_!)^* & (f_!)_! \end{array} . \quad (135)$$

One can omit parentheses provided one carefully observes the spacing that distinguishes between, e.g., f_*^* and f^*_* .

$$\begin{array}{ccc} f_{**} & f_*^* & f_{*!} \\ f^*_* & f^{**} & f^*_! \\ f_{!*} & f_!^* & f_{!!} \end{array} . \quad (136)$$

Exercise 37 Find all functions in diagram (136) that are functions from $\mathcal{P}\mathcal{P}X$ to $\mathcal{P}\mathcal{P}Y$.

1.16.2

Of these nine canonical functions between sets of families of subsets, four play an important role in Topology, Measure Theory, Mathematical Analysis, where families of subsets are essential objects of study.

1.16.3

Let $\mathcal{A} \subset \mathcal{P}X$ be a family of subsets of X , let $\mathcal{B} \subset \mathcal{P}Y$ be a family of subsets of Y .

Exercise 38 Show that

$$f_* \left(\bigcup \mathcal{A} \right) = \bigcup f_{**} \mathcal{A} \quad \text{and} \quad f^* \left(\bigcup \mathcal{B} \right) = \bigcup f^*_* \mathcal{B} \quad (137)$$

and express each identity in the form of a commutative diagram.

Exercise 39 Show that

$$f^* \left(\bigcap \mathcal{B} \right) = \bigcap f^* \mathcal{B} \quad \text{and} \quad f_! \left(\bigcap \mathcal{A} \right) = \bigcap f_! \mathcal{A} \quad (138)$$

and express each identity in the form of a commutative diagram.¹

Exercise 40 Show that

$$f_* \left(\bigcap \mathcal{A} \right) \subseteq \bigcap f_* \mathcal{A} \quad \text{and} \quad f_! \left(\bigcup \mathcal{A} \right) \supseteq \bigcup f_! \mathcal{A}. \quad (139)$$

In general, \subseteq cannot be replaced by $=$ in (139).

1.17 Indexed families of sets

1.17.1

An indexed family of sets $(X_i)_{i \in I}$ is, by definition, a function from a certain set I to the power-set of a certain set U ,

$$I \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}(U), \quad i \mapsto X_i.$$

The standard notation for the value at $i \in I$ is X_i . The set I is referred to as the *indexing set*.

1.17.2 The union and the intersection of an indexed family

Let us denote by \mathcal{X} the *image* of this function in $\mathcal{P}(U)$. It is a family of sets. The union and the intersection of \mathcal{X} are called, respectively, the *union* and the *intersection* of $(X_i)_{i \in I}$, and denoted

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} X_i \quad \text{and} \quad \bigcap_{i \in I} X_i.$$

Explicitly,

$$\bigcup_{i \in I} X_i := \{x \mid \exists_{i \in I} x \in X_i\} \quad (140)$$

and

$$\bigcap_{i \in I} X_i := \{x \mid \forall_{i \in I} x \in X_i\}. \quad (141)$$

1.17.3

When the indexing set I is empty, the comments made about the union and the intersection of an empty family of subsets apply, cf. 1.15.8.

¹A hint for both exercises: recall that \bigcup and \bigcap define certain canonical functions, cf. (12.6).

1.17.4 Selectors of an indexed family

Functions

$$I \longrightarrow \bigcup_{i \in I} X_i, \quad i \mapsto x_i, \quad (142)$$

satisfying

$$x_i \in X_i \quad (i \in I),$$

could be called *selectors* of indexed family $(X_i)_{i \in I}$. They are more frequently called *I-tuples* because in the case

$$I = \{1, \dots, n\},$$

they correspond to ordered *n-tuples* of elements of $\bigcup_{i \in I} X_i$.

1.17.5 “Tuple” notation

Standard notation for an *I-tuple* is $(x_i)_{i \in I}$. The subscript $i \in I$ is usually omitted when the indexing set is understood from the context.

1.17.6 The product of an indexed family of sets

Predictably, the set of all *I-tuples* of $(X_i)_{i \in I}$ is called the *product* of $(X_i)_{i \in I}$ and is denoted

$$\prod_{i \in I} X_i. \quad (143)$$

1.17.7

For $I = \{1, 2\}$, the product is naturally identified with the Cartesian product

$$X_1 \times X_2,$$

and, for $I = \{1, \dots, n\}$, it provides the most convenient model of the Cartesian product

$$X_1 \times \dots \times X_n.$$

1.17.8 Canonical projections (π_j)

Restricting a function (142) to a subset $J \subseteq I$ defines a function

$$\pi_J : \prod_{i \in I} X_i \longrightarrow \prod_{i \in J} X_i, \quad (144)$$

called the *canonical projection* (associated with a subset J of the indexing set. We have encountered these functions in Section 1.12.15 where $I = \{1, \dots, n\}$ and $J = \{i\}$.

1.17.9 Notation

In the interest of keeping notation simple, when, e.g., $J = \{2, 5, 7\}$, we write

$$\pi_{2,5,7} \quad \text{instead} \quad \pi_{\{2,5,7\}}$$

or, even, as

$$\pi_{257}$$

when it is clear from the context that the elements of J are natural numbers less than 10.

A general rule is to separate the items in a list of subscripts or superscripts by commas when notation is, otherwise, ambiguous, and to omit the commas when no ambiguity arises.

1.17.10 Composition of correspondences

Given correspondences

$$C \subseteq X_0 \times \cdots \times X_{m+1} \quad \text{and} \quad D \subseteq X_{m+1} \times \cdots \times X_{m+n+1},$$

their preimages under the canonical projections

$$\pi_{0,\dots,m+1}^* C \quad \text{and} \quad \pi_{m+1,\dots,m+n+1}^* D$$

are correspondences between elements of sets

$$X_0, \dots, X_{m+n+1}.$$

In particular, we can form their intersection

$$\pi_{0,\dots,m+1}^* C \cap \pi_{m+1,\dots,m+n+1}^* D$$

and project it into $X_0 \times \cdots \times \hat{X}_{m+1} \times \cdots \times X_{m+n+1}$,

$$(\pi_{\widehat{m+1}})_* (\pi_{0,\dots,m+1}^* C \cap \pi_{m+1,\dots,m+n+1}^* D), \quad (145)$$

where

$$\pi_{\widehat{m+1}} = \pi_{0,\dots,\widehat{m+1},\dots,m+n+1}.$$

We shall denote (145) by $C \circ D$.

1.17.11

Explicitly, $C \circ D$ consists of $(m + n + 1)$ -tuples

$$(x_0, \dots, \hat{x}_{m+1}, \dots, x_{m+n+1})$$

for which there exists $x_{m+1} \in X_{m+1}$ such that

$$(x_0, \dots, x_{m+1}) \in C \quad \text{and} \quad (x_{m+1}, \dots, x_{m+n+1}) \in D.$$

1.17.12

It follows that for $C = \Gamma_\rho$ and $D = \Gamma_\sigma$, one has

$$\Gamma_{\rho \circ \sigma} = \Gamma_\rho \circ \Gamma_\sigma. \quad (146)$$

2 The language of mathematical structures

2.1 Mathematical structures

2.1.1 The concept of a mathematical structure

A list of sets

$$X_1, \dots, X_n$$

equipped with some ‘data’ is what a mathematical structure is. As such, a mathematical structure can be thought of as an ordered pair

$$(X_1, \dots, X_n; \text{‘data’})$$

2.1.2

This simple concept became a focal point of modern Mathematics because it allows to view many apparently distant phenomena as manifestations of the same general laws.

2.1.3

Functions, operations, relations, are obvious examples of mathematical structures.

2.1.4 Structures of functional type

Sets X equipped with a family $\mathcal{O} \subset \text{Funct}(X, \mathbf{R})$ of real-valued functions on X ,

$$(X, \mathcal{O}),$$

are a backbone of Analysis. Think, for example, of a subset X of Euclidean space \mathbf{R}^n and \mathcal{O} being the set of all infinitely differentiable functions on X .

2.1.5 Structures of topological type

Sets X equipped with a family $\mathcal{A} \subset \mathcal{P}X$ of subsets

$$(X, \mathcal{A})$$

are the central objects in Topology, Geometry, Measure Theory, Combinatorics.

2.1.6 Example: topological spaces

A set X equipped with a family of subsets $\mathcal{T} \subset \mathcal{P}X$ closed under formation of *finite* intersections and arbitrary unions is called a *topological space*. Members of \mathcal{T} are referred to as *open subsets*.

2.1.7 Example: measurable spaces

A set X equipped with a family of subsets $\mathcal{M} \subset \mathcal{P}X$ closed under formation of *countable* intersections and under the complement operation \complement , cf. Section 1.6.3, is called a *measurable space*. Members of \mathcal{M} are referred to as *measurable subsets*.

2.2 Algebraic structures

2.2.1

Sets X equipped with an indexed family $(\mu_i)_{i \in I}$ of operations on X are called *algebraic structures*. Groups, rings, fields, vector spaces, etc., are all examples of algebraic structures.

2.2.2 Binary structures

A *binary structures* consists of a set X equipped with a binary operation on X ,

$$(X; \mu_2).$$

2.2.3 Multiplicative notation

Traditionally, the generic term for a binary operation has been *multiplication*, and the value $\mu_2(x, y)$ is written as xy or, by using *infix* notation, as

$$x \cdot y, \quad x * y, \text{ et caetera.}$$

2.2.4 The opposite binary structure

By flipping the arguments in a binary operation we obtain another binary operation on X

$$x, y \mapsto \mu_2^{\text{op}}(x, y) := \mu_2(y, x) \quad (x, y \in X). \quad (147)$$

The binary structure (X, μ_2^{op}) is referred to as the *opposite of* (X, μ_2^{op}) and is often denoted X, μ_2^{op} .

When using generic multiplicative notation it is highly advisable to mark elements of X considered as elements of the opposite binary structure, with the $^{\text{op}}$ tag. Then Definition (147) of the opposite operation becomes

$$x^{\text{op}} y^{\text{op}} := (yx)^{\text{op}} \quad (x, y \in X). \quad (148)$$

2.2.5 Left- and Right Cancellation Properties

If

$$\forall_{x, y, z \in X} xy = xz \implies y = z \quad (149)$$

we say that (X, \cdot) satisfies *Left Cancellation Property* or is *left-cancellative*.

If

$$\forall_{x, y, z \in X} xz = yz \implies x = y \quad (150)$$

we say that (X, \cdot) satisfies *Right Cancellation Property* or is *right-cancellative*.

2.2.6 Left- and right-identity elements

An element $e \in X$ is said to be a *left identity* if the following identity is satisfied

$$\forall_{x \in X} ex = x \quad (151)$$

and is said to be a *right identity* if the identity

$$\forall_{x \in X} xe = x \quad (152)$$

holds.

Note that e^{op} is a right identity in the opposite structure precisely when e is a left identity, and vice-versa.

2.2.7

A binary structure may admit none, one, or many left- or right-identity elements. For example, for the operation

$$X, X \longrightarrow X, \quad x_1, x_2 \mapsto x_1,$$

that discards the second entry from the argument list, *every* element is a right identity, and none is a left identity as long as X is not a singleton set.

2.2.8 Unital binary structures

If a binary structure admits at least one left identity, say $e \in X$, and at least one right identity, say $e' \in X$, then they coincide in view of the double equality

$$e = ee' = e'.$$

In this case we refer to that unique double-sided identity as *the identity element* of a binary structure. If we consider the identity element e as a distinguished element of X , i.e., as a *nullary* operation, μ_o , then the algebraic structure $(X; \mu_o, \mu_2)$ is referred to as a *unital binary structure*.

2.2.9

The defining pair of Identities (151) and (151) is equivalently described as commutativity of the left and, respectively, right triangles in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & X & \\ \mu_o \swarrow & & \searrow \mu_o \\ X, X & & X, X \\ \mu_2 \searrow & & \swarrow \mu_2 \\ & X & \end{array} \quad (153)$$

2.2.10 Left- and right inverses of an element

If elements $x, y \in X$ satisfy equality

$$xy = e,$$

where $e \in X$ is the identity, then x is said to be a *left inverse* of y and y is said to be a *right inverse* of x . In this case we also say that x is a *right-invertible*, while y is a *left-invertible* element.

Note that in the opposite structure x^{op} is a right inverse while y^{op} is a left inverse.

2.2.11 Pointed sets

A set equipped just with a nullary operation (X, μ_o) is frequently encountered in Topology where it would be called a *pointed set*, and the preferred notation would be (X, x_o) .

2.2.12 Idempotents

A *square* of any element $x \in X$ in a binary structure is defined to be

$$x^2 := x \cdot x.$$

Elements $e \in X$ such that $e^2 = e$ are called *idempotents*.

2.2.13

An attempt to define x^3 requires performing two multiplications and produces two outcomes

$$x \cdot x^2 \quad \text{and} \quad x^2 \cdot x.$$

2.2.14

An attempt to define x^4 requires performing three multiplications and produces five outcomes

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & x^2 \cdot x^2 & \\
 & \swarrow \quad \searrow & \\
 x \cdot (x \cdot x^2) & & (x^2 \cdot x) \cdot x \\
 \swarrow \quad \searrow & & \swarrow \quad \searrow \\
 x \cdot (x^2 \cdot x) & \text{---} & (x \cdot x^2) \cdot x
 \end{array} \tag{154}$$

2.2.15 Power associative binary structures

A binary structure is said to be *power associative* if, for every positive integer n , the product of n copies of an arbitrary element, calculated by applying $n - 1$ times multiplication, produces one and the same result regardless of how we group the arguments.

At this point it is necessary to mention that construction of the sequences of powers of an element in a binary structure is accomplished by *Recursive Definition*. Existence of recursively defined sequences is one of the key features of the set of natural numbers \mathbf{N} , more precisely, of its being *well-ordered*, cf. Section 3.3.11 below.

2.2.16 Semigroups

A single most important property of a binary operation on a set is known as *associativity* and is expressed in the form of the identity

$$\forall_{x,y,z \in X} (xy)z = x(yz) \tag{155}$$

or, alternatively, as commutativity of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & X, X, X & \\
 \mu_2 \swarrow & & \searrow \mu_2 \\
 X, X & \text{ } & X, X \\
 \mu_2 \searrow & \text{ } & \swarrow \mu_2 \\
 & X &
 \end{array}
 \quad (156)$$

An associative binary structure is called a *semigroup*.

2.2.17

Associativity of a binary operation, of course, implies its power-associativity, but no vice-versa.

In multiplicative notation, powers of an element x are written x^n . In additive notation x^n becomes nx . Here $n \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$.

2.2.18 Commutative binary structures

A second important property of a binary operation on a set is known as *commutativity* and is expressed in the form of the identity

$$\forall_{x,y \in X} xy = yx. \quad (157)$$

A binary structure (X, \cdot) is commutative precisely when

$$\mu_2 = \mu_2^{\text{op}},$$

i.e., when (X, \cdot) coincides with the opposite structure

$$(X, \cdot) = (X, \cdot)^{\text{op}}.$$

2.2.19 Terminology: abelian groups

We encounter commutative semigroups, monoids, semirings, rings, etc. Commutative *groups*, however, are traditionally called *abelian groups*. This tradition predates introduction of general algebraic structures.

2.2.20 Unital semigroups, i.e., monoids

Unital semigroups, i.e., unital binary structures $(X; \mu_0, \mu_2)$ with an associative multiplication are called *monoids*. They appear in nearly every aspect of Modern Mathematics.

2.2.21 Left- and right-invertible elements in a monoid

If

$$xx' = e \quad \text{and} \quad yy' = e,$$

then the short calculation

$$(xy)(y'x') = x((yy')x') = x(ex') = xx' = e$$

demonstrates that the subset of X formed by all right-invertible elements is closed under multiplication. Let us denote it X^{inv} . Similarly, the subset of X formed by all left-invertible elements is closed under multiplication. Let us denote it ${}^{\text{inv}}X$.

2.2.22 Invertible elements

If

$$xx' = e = x''x,$$

then the short calculation that makes use of associativity of multiplication,

$$x' = ex' = (x''x)x' = x''(xx') = x''e = x'',$$

demonstrates that, in a monoid, any element that admits a left and a right inverse, has precisely a single left and a single right inverse, and they necessarily coincide. That unique double inverse of an element x is usually denoted x^{-1} and is referred to as *the inverse of x* .

The subset of invertible elements of a monoid is sometimes denoted X^* , at other times it may be denoted $G(X)$. We established above that

$$X^* = {}^{\text{inv}}X \cap X^{\text{inv}}.$$

2.2.23

Assignment

$$X \longrightarrow X, \quad x \longmapsto x^{-1},$$

defines a unary operation on X^* and the set of invertible elements X^* equipped with the identity element, the inverse-element operation, and multiplication, is known as the *group of invertible elements of $(X; \mu_o, \mu_2)$* .

2.2.24 Groups

A *group* is an algebraic structure

$$(X; \mu_o, \mu_1, \mu_2)$$

such that $(X; \mu_o, \mu_2)$ is a monoid and μ_1 is a unary operation that sends an arbitrary element $x \in X$ to its inverse element, x^{-1} .

2.2.25

The defining pair of identities $x^{-1}x = e = xx^{-1}$ is equivalently described as commutativity of the left and, respectively, of the right triangle in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & X & \\
 \mu_1 \swarrow & & \searrow \mu_1 \\
 X, X & & X, X \\
 \mu_2 \searrow & \downarrow e_X & \swarrow \mu_2 \\
 & X &
 \end{array}
 \quad (158)$$

where e_X denotes the *constant* function

$$X \longrightarrow X, \quad x \longmapsto e \quad (x \in X).$$

Note that $e_X : X \rightarrow X$ is the composite function

$$X \longrightarrow \emptyset^\emptyset \xrightarrow{\tilde{e}} X$$

where $X \longrightarrow \emptyset^\emptyset$ is the unique function from X to the singleton set \emptyset^\emptyset and \tilde{e} is the function of a single variable canonically corresponding to the function of zero variables $e : \longrightarrow X$, cf. Section 1.12.13.

2.2.26 The canonical monoid structure on $\text{Op}_1(X)$

Composition \circ is a canonical binary operation on the set of all unary operations $\text{Op}_1(X)$ on an arbitrary set X . The identity operation id_X is a distinguished element of $\text{Op}_1(X)$. Composition of functions is associative and id_X is an identity element for the operation of composition.

Thus, $(\text{Op}_1(X), \text{id}_X, \circ)$ is a monoid and $\text{Op}_1(X)$ provides an example of a set that is equipped with a canonical structure of a monoid.

2.2.27 Fixed points of a unary operation

Given an operation $\tau \in \text{Op}_1(X)$ and an element of $x \in X$, we say that x is a *fixed point* of τ if

$$\tau(x) = x.$$

The set of fixed points of τ is often denoted

$$X^\tau.$$

2.2.28 A retraction of a set onto its subset

An idempotent τ in monoid $(\text{Op}_1(X), \text{id}_X, \circ)$ is called a *retraction*. If $Y = \tau_* X$ is the image of τ , then we often say that τ is a *retraction of a set X onto its subset Y* .

A unary operation τ is a retraction if and only if its image is contained in its set of fixed points,

$$\tau_* X \subseteq X^\tau.$$

2.2.29 The permutation group of a set

Invertible unary operations on a set X are, traditionally, called *permutations* (of elements of X). They form the group of permutations, denoted

$$\Sigma_X, \quad S_X, \quad \text{Per } X, \quad \text{or} \quad \text{Sym } X.$$

It is one of the most important groups in Mathematics.

2.2.30 Actions of sets on other sets

A set X , equipped with a family of unary operations $(\lambda_a)_{a \in A}$ indexed by a set A , is referred to as a set equipped with an *action of set A* . A short designation for this structure is an *A -set*.

An action of a set A on a set X is the same as a function

$$\lambda : A \longrightarrow \text{Op}_1(X). \quad (159)$$

We shall use, in general, notation (X, λ) to denote A -sets where λ is a function (159).

2.2.31 Standard multiplicative notation

The value of operation λ_a on an element $x \in X$ is frequently denoted ax .

2.2.32 Example: the left and the right regular actions of a semigroup

Given an element $a \in X$ of a binary structure (X, \cdot) , left and, respectively, right multiplication by a define two actions of X on set X ,

$$L_a : X \longrightarrow X, \quad x \longmapsto L_a(x) := ax, \quad (160)$$

and

$$R_a : X \longrightarrow X, \quad x \longmapsto R_a(x) := xa. \quad (161)$$

Multiplication in (X, \cdot) is associative if and only if unary operations L_a and R_b commute with each other,

$$\forall_{a,b \in X} L_a R_b = R_b L_a. \quad (162)$$

2.2.33 Example: the adjoint action of the group of invertible elements of a monoid

Given an invertible element $g \in X^*$ of a monoid (X, e, \cdot) , the formula

$$\text{ad}_g : X \longrightarrow X, \quad x \longmapsto \text{ad}_g(x) := gxg^{-1}, \quad (163)$$

defines an action of X^* on set X .

Exercise 41 Show that, for any $g, b \in X^*$, one has

$$\text{ad}_{gb} = \text{ad}_g \circ \text{ad}_b, \quad \text{ad}_e = \text{id}_X \quad \text{and} \quad \text{ad}_{g^{-1}} = (\text{ad}_g)^{-1}. \quad (164)$$

2.2.34

Semigroups, monoids, groups, are encountered everywhere where mathematical considerations are involved.

Algebraic structures involving two binary operations lead to algebraic structures known as semirings and rings. They will be introduced and discussed later.

2.3 Relational structures

2.3.1

Sets X equipped with an indexed family $(\rho_i)_{i \in I}$ of relations on X are called *relational structures*. Such structures are encountered in all areas of Mathematics and especially so in Mathematical Logic and in Incidence Geometry.

2.3.2

Particularly important are *binary relational structures*, i.e., sets equipped with a single binary relation. We discuss them in Chapter 6 devoted to binary relations.

2.4 Substructures

2.4.1

For every type of a mathematical structure there is usually naturally defined notion of a *substructure*.

2.4.2 Subsets

For sets equipped with no “data”, a substructure is the same as a subset.

2.4.3 Algebraic substructures

For sets X equipped with a family of operations $(\mu_i)_{i \in I}$, a substructure consists of a subset, say $Y \subseteq X$, *closed* under each operation μ_i , i.e., such that the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X, \dots, X & \xrightarrow{\mu_i} & X \\ \uparrow \quad \dots \quad \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ Y, \dots, Y & & Y \end{array} \quad (165)$$

admits completion to the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X, \dots, X & \xrightarrow{\mu_i} & X \\ \uparrow \quad \dots \quad \uparrow & \curvearrowright & \uparrow \\ Y, \dots, Y & \xrightarrow{\mu_i} & Y \end{array} . \quad (166)$$

Note that function $\bar{\mu}_i$ is unique when it exists, and its values coincide with the corresponding values of μ_i ,

$$\forall_{x_1, \dots, x_n \in X} \bar{\mu}_i(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \mu_i(x_1, \dots, x_n).$$

We refer to μ_i as the operation *induced* by μ_i on Y .

2.4.4

Note that $\bar{\mu}_i$ is *not* the restriction of μ_i to Y . The restriction of a function has a smaller domain and the *same* target. In particular, the restriction of μ_i produces a function

$$Y_1, \dots, Y_n \longrightarrow X,$$

not an operation on a subset Y .

2.4.5

If a subset Y is closed under *every* operation μ_i , then $(Y, (\bar{\mu}_i)_{i \in I})$ is called a *substructure* of a structure $(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$.

This is how we define *subgroups*, *submonoids*, *subsemigroups*, *subrings*, *vector subspaces*, etc.

2.4.6 The ordered set of substructures $\text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$

Let us denote by $\text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$ the set of substructures of $(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$, i.e., the set of subsets of X that are closed under every operation μ_i . It is ordered by inclusion.

Exercise 42 Let $\mathcal{Y} \subseteq \text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$ be a family of substructures of $(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$. Show that the intersection of members of \mathcal{Y} is a substructure.

2.4.7

The union of a family of substructures is not a substructure, in general. For example, the union of two vector subspaces $V' \cup V''$ of a vector space V is closed under addition of vectors if and only if either $V' \subseteq V''$ or $V'' \subseteq V'$.

Exercise 43 Suppose that $V' \cup V''$ is closed under addition of vectors. Show that either $V' \subseteq V''$ or $V'' \subseteq V'$.

Solution. Suppose that $V'' \not\subseteq V'$. Let $v' \in V'$ and $v'' \in V'' \setminus V'$, and assume that $v' + v'' \in V' \cup V''$. If $v' + v'' \in V'$, then

$$v'' = (v' + v'') - v' \in V'.$$

Since $v'' \notin V'$, we deduce that

$$v' + v'' \in (V' \cup V'') \setminus V' \subseteq V''.$$

It follows that

$$v' = (v' + v'') - v'' \in V'',$$

i.e., $V' \subseteq V''$. □

2.4.8 Locally filtered families of subsets

We shall say that a family of subsets $\mathcal{Y} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ is *locally filtered* if, for every *finite subset*

$$F \subseteq \bigcup \mathcal{Y},$$

there exists a member $Y \in \mathcal{Y}$, such that

$$F \subseteq Y.$$

Exercise 44 Let $\mathcal{Y} \subseteq \text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$ be a locally filtered family of substructures of $(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$. Show that the union of members of \mathcal{Y} is a substructure.

2.4.9 The substructure $\langle A \rangle$ generated by a subset $A \subseteq X$

Given a subset $A \subseteq X$, the intersection of the family

$$\mathcal{Y}_A := \{ Y \in \text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I}) \mid Y \supseteq A \}$$

is the smallest substructure containing subset A . We shall denote it $\langle A \rangle$ and call it the substructure *generated by A* .

Exercise 45 Show that

$$\forall_{A, B \subseteq X} A \subseteq B \Rightarrow \langle A \rangle \subseteq \langle B \rangle. \quad (167)$$

Exercise 46 Show that

$$\forall_{A \subseteq X} \langle A \rangle = \langle \langle A \rangle \rangle. \quad (168)$$

2.4.10 Invariant subsets

Subsets $Y \subseteq X$ closed under a *unary operation* $\tau : X \rightarrow X$ are frequently encountered outside of Algebra, for example in Theory of Group Actions, Theory of Dynamical Systems, Topology, Operator Theory. Such sets are said to be *invariant* or, more precisely, τ -invariant. In the language of diagrams invariance of a subset Y is expressed by saying that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\tau} & X \\ \uparrow & & \uparrow \\ Y & & Y \end{array} \quad (169)$$

admits completion to the commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{\tau} & X \\ \uparrow & \text{ } & \uparrow \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\tau_*} & Y \end{array} \quad (170)$$

Invariance of a subset $Y \subseteq X$ is expressed in terms of the *direct image* function by the condition

$$\tau_* Y \subseteq Y \quad (171)$$

or, in terms of the *inverse image* function, by the equivalent condition

$$Y \subseteq \tau^* Y. \quad (172)$$

2.4.11 Coinvariant subsets

If we reverse the relation in Condition (172),

$$Y \supseteq \tau^* Y, \tag{173}$$

then we obtain a *dual* condition that is equivalent to

$$\tau_! Y \supseteq Y. \tag{174}$$

We shall say in such case that Y is a *coinvariant* subset or, more precisely, a τ -*coinvariant* subset.

3 Morphisms

3.1 Interactions between mathematical structures

3.1.1

If mathematical structures are *objects* of mathematical theories, studying a given structure is nearly always executed by observing how that structure *interacts* with other structures of the same type. Binary interactions between structures are expressed in the language of *morphisms*.

3.1.2 The concept of a *concrete* morphism

A *morphism*

$$f : (X, \text{data}) \longrightarrow (X', \text{data}') \quad (175)$$

is most commonly understood to be a function between the *underlying sets*

$$f : X \longrightarrow X'$$

that *respects* the corresponding data. We refer to such morphisms as being *concrete morphisms*.

3.1.3

It is assumed that the data must be of the same type. The term ‘respects’ can be replaced by: ‘is compatible with’. The meaning of this term is nearly always natural for each type of data. We shall illustrate this for some types of mathematical structures mentioned above.

The crucial expectation when introducing a suitable concept of a morphism between sets equipped with data is that the composite $g \circ f$ of two composable morphisms

$$(X, \text{data}) \xrightarrow{f} (X', \text{data}') \xrightarrow{g} (X'', \text{data}'')$$

is again a morphism.

Additionally, it is expected that the identity operation id_X is an endomorphism of

$$(X, \text{data}) \quad (176)$$

irrespective of what type of data we may consider.

3.1.4 Terminology: an *endomorphism*

When $(X, \text{data}) = (X', \text{data}')$ a morphism (175) is referred to as an *endomorphism* of (X, data) ..

3.1.5 The monoid of endomorphisms $\text{End}(X, \text{data})$

In agreement with the requirements spelled out in Section 3.1.3, the set of endomorphisms of (176) is equipped with a canonical monoid structure

$$(\text{End}(X, \text{data}), \text{id}_X, \circ). \quad (177)$$

This is the most important source of monoids in Mathematics and its applications.

3.1.6 Terminology: an isomorphism

When there exists a morphism

$$g : (X', \text{data}') \longrightarrow (X, \text{data}) \quad (178)$$

such that

$$f \circ g = \text{id}_{X'} \quad \text{and} \quad g \circ f = \text{id}_X, \quad (179)$$

we say that f is an *isomorphism between* (X, data) and (X', data') . A pair of morphisms satisfying pair of equalities (179) is said to be *inverse to each other*.

3.1.7 Terminology: an automorphism

An endomorphism of (X, data) that is an isomorphism is said to be an *automorphism of* (X, data) .

3.1.8 The group of automorphisms $\text{Aut}(X, \text{data})$

Automorphisms form a subset of the monoid $\text{End}(X, \text{data})$ that is closed under composition and formation of inverses. It is therefore naturally equipped with a structure of a group. This is the most important source of groups in Mathematics and its applications.

3.1.9 The arrow notation

Morphisms are represented graphically as arrows. Every arrow has its source and its target, each being a structure of the same type. They are referred to as the *source* and the *target* of a morphism.

3.2 Morphisms between algebraic structures

3.2.1 Homomorphisms

Suppose that a set X is equipped with an n -ary operation μ and a set X' is equipped with an n -ary operation μ' . We say that a function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ is *compatible* with the operations if

$$\forall_{x_1, \dots, x_n \in X} f(\mu(x_1, \dots, x_n)) = \mu'(f(x_1), \dots, f(x_n)). \quad (180)$$

Algebraists refer to such functions as *homomorphisms*.

3.2.2

The definition of a morphism between sets equipped with an n -ary operation can be also expressed as commutativity of the following square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X', \dots, X' & \xrightarrow{\mu'} & X' \\ \uparrow f & \cdots \uparrow f & \uparrow f \\ X, \dots, X & \xrightarrow{\mu} & X \end{array} \quad (181)$$

3.2.3

The above definition can be easily extended to general algebraic structures. A morphism

$$(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I}) \longrightarrow (X', (\mu'_i)_{i \in I})$$

is a function $f: X \rightarrow X'$ such that it is a homomorphism

$$(X, \mu_i) \longrightarrow (X', \mu'_i)$$

for *each* $i \in I$. Notice that μ_i and μ'_i must have the same ‘arity’ for every $i \in I$.

The concept of a homomorphism provides the most natural definition of a morphism between algebraic structures.

3.2.4 Example: morphisms between pointed sets

A morphism from a pointed set (X, x_o) to a pointed set (X', x'_o) is, by definition, a function $f: X \rightarrow X'$ such that

$$f(x_o) = x_o'. \quad (182)$$

3.2.5 Example: morphisms between \mathcal{A} -sets

A morphism from an \mathcal{A} -set (X, λ) to an \mathcal{A} -set (X', λ') , cf. Section 2.2.30, is, by definition, a function $f: X \rightarrow X'$ such that

$$\forall_{a \in A} f \circ \lambda_a = \lambda'_a \circ f \quad (183)$$

or, equivalently, in multiplicative notation,

$$\forall_{a \in A, x \in X} f(ax) = af(x). \quad (184)$$

3.2.6

Condition (183) can be expressed as commutativity of square diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{\lambda'_a} & X' \\ f \uparrow & \textcolor{red}{\circlearrowleft} & \uparrow f \\ X & \xrightarrow{\lambda_a} & X \end{array} \quad (185)$$

for all $a \in A$.

3.2.7 Antihomomorphisms between binary structures

Homomorphisms between binary structures

$$(A, \cdot)^{\text{op}} \longrightarrow (A', \cdot') \quad \text{or} \quad (A, \cdot) \longrightarrow (A', \cdot')^{\text{op}}$$

are the same as *antihomomorphisms* $(A, \cdot) \rightarrow (A', \cdot')$, i.e., functions $f : A \rightarrow A'$ that satisfy the condition

$$\forall_{a,b \in A} f(ab) = f(b)f(a). \quad (186)$$

3.2.8 Actions of binary structures (A, \cdot) on sets

The set of unary operations $\text{Op}_1(X)$ of any set X is canonically equipped with a structure of a monoid. When a set A , equipped with a binary operation \cdot , is acting on a set X , it is usually assumed that the action function λ in (159) is a homomorphism of binary algebraic structures, i.e., that

$$\forall_{a,b \in A} \lambda_{a \cdot b} = \lambda_a \circ \lambda_b. \quad (187)$$

Condition (187) is equivalently expressed as the identity that closely resembles Associativity

$$\forall_{a,b \in A} \forall_{x \in X} (a \cdot b)x = a(bx). \quad (188)$$

3.2.9

If the same generic multiplicative notation is used for the binary operation in A and for the action of A on X , then the requirement that λ be a homomorphism takes the form of the identity

$$\forall_{a,b \in A} \forall_{x \in X} (ab)x = a(bx) \quad (189)$$

that is indistinguishable from Associativity. And for a good reason: Associativity of a binary algebraic structure (A, \cdot) expresses the fact that the structure acts on set A by left-multiplication.

Exercise 47 Show that a binary algebraic structure (A, \cdot) is associative if and only if the left-multiplication function, cf. (160),

$$L : A \longrightarrow \text{Op}_1(A), \quad a \longmapsto L_a, \quad (190)$$

is a homomorphism of binary algebraic structures.

3.2.10 Right actions

What we described above is also known as a *left* action of a binary structure (A, \cdot) . A *right action* is an *antihomomorphism*

$$\varrho : A \longrightarrow \text{Op}_1(X). \quad (191)$$

Exercise 48 Show that a binary algebraic structure (A, \cdot) is associative if and only if the right-multiplication function, cf. (161),

$$R : A \longrightarrow \text{Op}_1(A), \quad a \longmapsto R_a, \quad (192)$$

is an antihomomorphism of binary algebraic structures.

3.2.11

Generic multiplicative notation for right actions places an element $a \in A$ that acts on $x \in X$ on the *right*

$$\varrho_a(x) = xa. \quad (193)$$

This is where the terms *left* and *right* action come from.

The property of ϱ being an antihomomorphism then again has the form of the familiar associativity condition

$$\forall_{a,b \in A} \forall_{x \in X} x(ab) = (xa)b. \quad (194)$$

3.2.12

The left and the right regular actions of a semigroup on itself, introduced in Section 2.2.32 are particularly important in Group Theory and in Theory of Group Actions.

3.3 Semirings

3.3.1 Sets equipped with two binary operations

Suppose a set X is equipped with two binary operations, denoted $*$ and \cdot , respectively.

3.3.2 Left Distributivity Property

If the operations of left multiplication by a ,

$$L_a \in \text{Op}_I X \quad (a \in X),$$

cf. (160), act on X as *endomorphisms of binary structure* $(X, *)$, i.e., if

$$L_a \in \text{End}(X, *) \quad (a \in X),$$

we say that operation \cdot *left-distributes over operation* $*$. Left Distributivity of \cdot over $*$ is equivalent to the following identity

$$\forall_{a,x,y \in X} \quad a \cdot (x * y) = a \cdot x * a \cdot y. \quad (195)$$

3.3.3 Right Distributivity Property

If the operations of right multiplication by a ,

$$R_a \in \text{Op}_I X \quad (a \in X),$$

cf. (161), act on X as *endomorphisms of binary structure* $(X, *)$, i.e., if

$$R_a \in \text{End}(X, *) \quad (a \in X),$$

we say that operation \cdot *right-distributes over operation* $*$. Right Distributivity of \cdot over $*$ is equivalent to the following identity

$$\forall_{a,x,y \in X} \quad (x * y) \cdot a = x \cdot a * y \cdot a. \quad (196)$$

3.3.4 Commutative semigroups

The binary operation in a commutative semigroup is often referred to as *addition* and $+$ is the generic symbol for such an operation.

3.3.5 Semirings

Suppose a commutative semigroup $(S, +)$ is equipped with a secondary operation \cdot , referred to as *multiplication*, that is both left and right distributive over addition. We call

$$(S, +, \cdot)$$

a *semiring*. We say that a semiring is *associative*, *commutative*, *unital*, if the multiplicative binary structure (S, \cdot) is associative, commutative or, respectively, unital.

3.3.6 \mathbf{o} and $\mathbf{1}$ in a semiring

The identity element of the additive semigroup $(S, +)$ is referred to as the *zero* element, if it exists, and is denoted \mathbf{o} .

The identity element of the multiplicative binary structure (S, \cdot) is denoted $\mathbf{1}$, when it exists, and is simply referred to as the *identity element* or the *unit element* (of the semiring).

3.3.7

In general, $s \cdot \mathbf{o}$ may not equal \mathbf{o} . This is so, however, if the additive semigroup $(S, +)$ is *cancellative*, cf. Section (2.2.5).

Exercise 49 Show that in a semiring-with-zero

$$\forall_{s \in S} \mathbf{o} \cdot s = \mathbf{o} = s \cdot \mathbf{o} \quad (197)$$

if addition is cancellative.

3.3.8 Rings

When the additive semigroup of a semiring is a group, we say that a semiring is a ring.

3.3.9 The ordered unital semiring-with-zero of natural numbers $(\mathbf{N}, \mathbf{o}, \mathbf{1}, +, \cdot, \leq)$

A principal example of a semiring is provided by the set of natural numbers equipped with the standard addition and multiplication operations. Its existence is equivalent to existence of an infinite set. We prove that and we establish some of its key features by studying *twisted sets*, i.e., unary algebraic structures (X, μ_1) . We do this in separate sets of notes.

3.3.10

One such feature is that the additive semigroup $(\mathbf{N}, +)$ and the multiplicative semigroup $(\mathbf{N} \setminus \{\mathbf{o}\}, \cdot)$ are *cancellative*, cf. Section 2.2.5.

3.3.11

Another feature is presence of the order relation that can be expressed entirely in terms of the operation of addition

$$\forall_{m, n \in \mathbf{N}} (m \leq n \Leftrightarrow \exists_{l \in \mathbf{N}} l + m = n). \quad (198)$$

and that has the following properties :

- (i) natural number l in (198) is unique and is denoted $n - m$;
- (ii) $\forall_{n \in \mathbf{N}} \mathbf{o} \leq n < \mathbf{1} \Rightarrow \mathbf{o} = n$;
- (iii) $\forall_{m, n \in \mathbf{N}} m < n \Leftrightarrow m + \mathbf{1} \leq n$;
- (iv) (\mathbf{N}, \leq) is a well-ordered set, cf. Section 1.4.13 ;

(v) $(\mathbf{N}, +, \leq)$ and $(\mathbf{N}, \cdot, \leq)$ are *ordered semigroups*, i.e.,

$$\forall_{m,n,m',n' \in \mathbf{N}} \quad m \leq m' \wedge n \leq n' \Rightarrow m+n \leq m'+n' \wedge mn \leq m'n'.$$

The following lemma is frequently used.

Lemma 3.1 (Euclid) *For every $m \in \mathbf{N}$ and $n \in \mathbf{N} \setminus \{0\}$, there exist unique $q, r \in \mathbf{N}$ such that*

$$m = qn + r \quad \text{and} \quad 0 \leq r < n. \quad (199)$$

Proof. Consider the set

$$E := \{l \in \mathbf{N} \mid m < ln\}.$$

Since $1 \leq n$, one has $m \cdot 1 \leq mn$; hence $mn \in E$ and E is not empty. Let k be its smallest element. Since every element of E is greater than 0, there exists $q := k - 1 \in \mathbf{N}$ and

$$qn \leq m < qn + n.$$

Equivalently, $r := m - qn$ satisfies the double inequality

$$0 \leq r < n.$$

If q and r satisfy Equality (199), then $q + 1$ is the smallest element of set E ; hence, representation (199) of m is unique. \square

3.4 Morphisms between n -ary relations

3.4.1

A general approach to binary interactions between n -ary relations with the same domain-list consists of using a binary relation \sim on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ to verify, for given $\rho, \rho' \in \text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$, whether $\rho \sim \rho'$ or not.

3.4.2

Given two n -ary relations whose domain-lists are arbitrary and not necessarily equal

$$\rho : X_1, \dots, X_n \longrightarrow \text{Statements} \quad \text{and} \quad \rho' : X'_1, \dots, X'_n \longrightarrow \text{Statements},$$

we may use a function-list (74) to *pull-back* ρ' to the domain-list of ρ and then *declare* that function-list a \sim -morphism from ρ to ρ' if

$$\rho \sim (f_1, \dots, f_n)^\bullet \rho'. \quad (200)$$

Note that the identity-list

$$\text{id}_{X_1}, \dots, \text{id}_{X_n}$$

is a \sim -morphism precisely when $\rho \sim \rho'$.

3.4.3

This approach requires that every domain-list X_1, \dots, X_n has been equipped with a binary relation \sim .

There is a canonical way to equip sets $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ with binary relations that are induced by a single binary relation on the common target of all relations, the set of statements.

3.4.4 Definition of a \sim -morphism

Given a binary relation \sim on the set of statements, we *declare* a function-list f_1, \dots, f_n to be a \sim -morphism from ρ to ρ' if condition (200) holds for the relation induced by \sim on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$.

3.4.5

Note that we use the same symbol \sim to denote the original relation on the set of statements, and the induced relation on $\text{Rel}(X_1, \dots, X_n)$. This is a common practice and rarely leads to confusion if used with care. The actual meaning is usually clear from the context.

This practice is analogous to using the same symbol $+$ for addition of real numbers, as well as the *induced* operation of addition of real-valued functions.

3.4.6 \Rightarrow -morphisms, \Leftarrow -morphisms, \Leftrightarrow -morphisms

An essential feature of the language of morphisms is the expectation that morphisms can be *composed* and that the composition law is associative. This requirement narrows the choice of the binary relations \sim on the set of statements to transitive relations.

Recall that any transitive relation on the set of statements that is stronger than the *equipotence* relation \Leftrightarrow , is necessarily equipotent to \Rightarrow , \Leftarrow , or is a total relation, cf. Lemma 1.4. The first three are, in practice, the only choices for \sim that lead to a nontrivial notion of a morphism between relations.

Note that a function-list (74) is a \Leftrightarrow -morphism if and only if it is at once a \Rightarrow -morphism and a \Leftarrow -morphism.

3.4.7

Composition of two \sim -morphisms, where \sim is one of those three relations \Rightarrow , \Leftarrow , or \Leftrightarrow , and both morphisms have the same type, is again a \sim -morphism and of the same type.

3.4.8

The definition of a \sim -morphism for each of those three choices of \sim is expressed by means of the corresponding diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & X'_1, \dots, X'_n & \\
 & \uparrow \quad \quad \uparrow & \searrow \rho' \\
 (\Rightarrow\text{-morphism}) & f_1 \quad \dots \quad f_n & \text{Statements} \\
 & \uparrow \quad \quad \uparrow & \nearrow \rho \\
 & X_1, \dots, X_n &
 \end{array} \tag{201}$$

$$(\Leftarrow\text{-morphism}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & X'_1, \dots, X'_n & \\ \uparrow f_1 & \dots & \uparrow f_n \\ X_1, \dots, X_n & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \text{Statements} \\ & \nwarrow \rho' & \end{array} \quad (202)$$

$$(\Leftrightarrow\text{-morphism}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & X'_1, \dots, X'_n & \\ \uparrow f_1 & \dots & \uparrow f_n \\ X_1, \dots, X_n & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \text{Statements} \\ & \nwarrow \rho' & \end{array} \quad (203)$$

Exercise 50 Show that f_1, \dots, f_n is a \sim -morphism from ρ to ρ' if and only if

$$\Gamma_\rho \subseteq (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)^* \Gamma_{\rho'}, \quad \Gamma_\rho \supseteq (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)^* \Gamma_{\rho'} \quad \text{or, respectively,} \quad \Gamma_\rho = (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)^* \Gamma_{\rho'}, \quad (204)$$

depending on whether \sim is \Rightarrow , \Leftarrow , or \Leftrightarrow .

3.4.9 Characterization of \Rightarrow -morphisms

Recall that

$$(f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)_* \Gamma_\rho \subseteq \Gamma_{\rho'} \Leftrightarrow \Gamma_\rho \subseteq (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)^* \Gamma_{\rho'}. \quad (205)$$

It follows from (204)–(205) that the following conditions are equivalent.

- (a) f_1, \dots, f_n is a \Rightarrow -morphism from ρ to ρ' .
- (b) ρ is *weaker* than the pull-back of ρ' by f_1, \dots, f_n , cf. Section 1.14.17.
- (c) ρ' is *stronger* than the push-forward of ρ by f_1, \dots, f_n , cf. Section 1.14.18.

3.4.10 Characterization of \Leftarrow -morphisms

There is a similar characterization of \Leftarrow -morphisms. It is based on the middle part of (204) and on the equivalence

$$(f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)! \Gamma_\rho \supseteq \Gamma_{\rho'} \Leftrightarrow \Gamma_\rho \supseteq (f_1 \times \dots \times f_n)^* \Gamma_{\rho'}. \quad (206)$$

The following conditions are equivalent.

- (a) f_1, \dots, f_n is a \Leftarrow -morphism from ρ to ρ' .
- (b) ρ is *stronger* than the pull-back of ρ' by f_1, \dots, f_n .
- (c) ρ' is *weaker* than the conjugate push-forward of ρ by f_1, \dots, f_n , cf. Section 1.14.19.

3.4.11 Terminology

In practice, \Rightarrow -morphisms are usually referred simply as *morphisms* (between relations), \Leftrightarrow -morphisms are frequently referred to as *strict morphisms*, while \Leftarrow -morphisms rarely make their appearance in actual arguments built by mathematicians.

3.4.12

Functions $\forall_{x_i \in A_i}$ and \forall^i , cf. (42) and (43), defined by *universal* quantification, are \Rightarrow -morphisms of binary relational structures if we equip the sets of relations with the *implication* relation \Rightarrow .

This fact, known since at least the times of Aristotle, is hardly ever mentioned, yet it is constantly used when reasoning is based on rules of Logic.

Exercise 51 Is $\forall_{x_i \in A_i}$ or \forall^i a \Leftarrow -morphism?

Exercise 52 Is $\exists_{x_i \in A_i}$ or \exists^i a \sim -morphism for \sim being \Rightarrow , \Leftarrow or \Leftrightarrow ?

3.4.13 Morphisms between relational structures

When

$$X_1 = \dots = X_n = X, \quad X'_1 = \dots = X'_n = X' \quad \text{and} \quad f_1 = \dots = f_n = f,$$

we shall be denoting the pulled-back relation $(f, \dots, f) \cdot \rho'$ by $f \cdot \rho'$.

We say that $f : X \rightarrow X'$ is a \sim -morphism from a relational structure (X, ρ) to a relational structure (X', ρ') if

$$\rho \sim f \cdot \rho'.$$

3.5 The ordered \ast -monoid of 2-correspondences $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X); \Delta_X, \tau_*, \circ; \subseteq)$

3.5.1

If $C \subseteq X \times X$ and $D \subseteq X \times X$, then their composition $C \circ D$, defined in Section 1.17.10,

$$C \circ D = \{(x, y) \in X \times X \mid \exists_{z \in X} (x, z) \in C \wedge (z, y) \in D\}, \quad (207)$$

is contained in $X \times X$. In particular, the set of 2-correspondences on a set X , equipped with the composition operation, is a semigroup.

3.5.2 (Pre)ordered binary algebraic structures

Let (B, \cdot, \preceq) be a set equipped with a binary algebraic operation and a preorder relation \preceq . We say that (B, \cdot, \preceq) is a *preordered binary algebraic structure* if

$$\forall_{a, a', b, b' \in B} \quad a \preceq a' \wedge b \preceq b' \Rightarrow ab \preceq a'b'. \quad (208)$$

Exercise 53 Show that, if $C \subseteq C'$ and $D \subseteq D'$, then

$$C \circ D \subseteq C' \circ D', \quad (209)$$

i.e., $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \circ, \subseteq)$ is an ordered semigroup.

3.5.3 The diagonal subsets $\Delta_n(X) \subset X^n$

The subset

$$\Delta_n(X) := \{(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in X \times \dots \times X \mid x_1 = \dots = x_n\} \quad (210)$$

is referred to as the *n-diagonal*.

3.5.4 The diagonal function $\Delta : X \longrightarrow X \times X$ and its image Δ_X

The 2-diagonal set is usually denoted Δ_X . It coincides with the image of the *diagonal function*

$$\Delta : X \longrightarrow X \times X, \quad x \longmapsto (x, x). \quad (211)$$

Exercise 54 Show that,

$$\forall_{C \subseteq X \times X} \Delta_X \circ C = C = C \circ \Delta_X, \quad (212)$$

i.e., Δ_X is an identity element for \circ . In particular, $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \Delta_X, \circ, \subseteq)$ is an ordered monoid.

3.5.5 The graph homomorphism $\Gamma : (\mathbf{Op}_1 X, \text{id}_X, \circ) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \Delta_X, \circ)$

The graph-of-a-function correspondence

$$f \longmapsto \Gamma_f := \{(x, y) \in X \times X \mid f(x) = y\}$$

is an injective homomorphism of monoids

$$(\mathbf{Op}_1 X, \text{id}_X, \circ) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \Delta_X, \circ).$$

It identifies the monoid of unary operations on X with a submonoid of 2-correspondences on X .

3.5.6 Antiinvolutions

Let (B, \cdot) be a binary algebraic structure. An operation $\alpha : B \longrightarrow B$ is said to be an *antiinvolution* if it satisfies the identities

$$\alpha \circ \alpha = \text{id}_B \quad \text{and} \quad \forall_{a, b \in B} \alpha(ab) = \alpha(b)\alpha(a). \quad (213)$$

3.5.7 *-binary structures

A binary structure equipped with an antiinvolution, (B, α, \cdot) , is called a **-binary structure*.

Exercise 55 Let $e \in B$ be a left identity element for (B, \cdot) . Show that $\alpha(e)$ is a right identity for (B, \cdot) .

Solution. For any $a \in B$, one has

$$a\alpha(e) = (\alpha(\alpha(a))\alpha(e) = \alpha(e\alpha(a)) = \alpha(\alpha(a)) = a.$$

□

Exercise 56 Let $e \in B$ be a right identity element for (B, \cdot) . Show that $\alpha(e)$ is a left identity for (B, \cdot) .

In Section 2.2.8 we observed that, if a binary structure (B, \cdot) admits both a left and a right identity, then they are equal. It follows that if a *-binary structure contains a one-sided identity element e , then this element is necessarily a two-sided identity and e is fixed by the antiinvolution

$$\alpha(e) = e. \quad (214)$$

3.5.8 The flip operation on $X \times X$

Let us denote by τ the operation on set $X \times X$ that transposes the factors in $X \times X$,

$$\tau(x_1, x_2) := (x_2, x_1). \quad (215)$$

Exercise 57 Show that τ_* is an antiinvolution on the monoid of 2-correspondences $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \Delta_X, \circ)$, i.e.,

$$\tau_*(C \circ D) = \tau_* D \circ \tau_* C. \quad (216)$$

In particular, $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X); \Delta_X, \tau_*, \circ; \subseteq)$ is an ordered $*$ -monoid.

3.5.9

In Mathematics and, especially, in Mathematical Physics, $*$ -structures play an important role. We encounter $*$ -semigroups, $*$ -monoids, $*$ -groups, and $*$ -rings, i.e., rings equipped with an antiinvolution for addition and multiplication.

3.5.10

The ring of $n \times n$ -matrices equipped with matrix transposition is an example of a $*$ -ring that you are familiar with. Another example is provided by the field of complex numbers \mathbb{C} equipped with complex conjugation.

Theory of $*$ -rings of linear operators has been one of the most active areas of Mathematics during the last 80 years. One of its multiple applications to Mathematical Physics has been Constructive Quantum Field Theory.

3.5.11 The preordered $*$ -structure of binary relations $(\mathbf{Rel}_2 X; =, ()^{\text{op}}, \circ; \Rightarrow)$

The set of binary relations on a set X is canonically equipped with a preordered $*$ -structure. Implication \Rightarrow is the preorder, composition of relations is the (nonassociative) binary operation and the opposite-relation operation is the antiinvolution.

3.5.12 The graph homomorphism $\Gamma : (\mathbf{Rel}_2 X; =, ()^{\text{op}}, \circ; \Rightarrow) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}(X \times X); \Delta_X, \tau_*, \circ; \subseteq)$

Exercise 58 Show that the graph of the equality relation $=$ on X equals Δ_X .

Exercise 59 Show that, for any binary relation ρ on X , one has

$$\Gamma_{\rho^{\text{op}}} = \tau_* \Gamma_{\rho}. \quad (217)$$

Exercise 60 Show that, for any binary relations ρ and σ on X , one has

$$\Gamma_{\rho \circ \sigma} = \Gamma_{\rho} \circ \Gamma_{\sigma}. \quad (218)$$

By combining Exercises 13, 58, 59, and 60, we conclude that the graph function

$$\Gamma : \mathbf{Rel}_2 X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}(X \times X)$$

is a surjective homomorphism of preordered $*$ -structures.

3.5.13 Graph characterizations of various types of binary relations

Each of the important properties of a binary relation ρ on a set X admits a characterization in terms of the graph Γ_ρ of ρ .

3.5.14 Subidempotent correspondences

Let us denote by $\mathcal{P}^{\text{subid}}(X \times X)$ the set

$$\{C \subseteq X \times X \mid C \circ C \subseteq C\} \quad (219)$$

of *subidempotent* correspondences.

Exercise 61 Show that ρ is transitive if and only if

$$\Gamma_\rho \circ \Gamma_\rho \subseteq \Gamma_\rho, \quad (220)$$

i.e., Γ_ρ is a subidempotent in ordered semigroup $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \circ, \subseteq)$.

Exercise 62 Let $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathcal{P}^{\text{subid}}(X \times X)$. Show that

$$\bigcap \mathcal{C} \in \mathcal{P}^{\text{subid}}(X \times X),$$

i.e., the family of subidempotent correspondences $\mathcal{P}^{\text{subid}}(X \times X)$ is closed under intersection of arbitrary subfamilies.

3.5.15

Given $C \subseteq X \times X$, the family

$$\mathcal{C}_C^{\text{subid}} := \{D \in \mathcal{P}^{\text{subid}}(X \times X) \mid D \supseteq C\} \quad (221)$$

contains $X \times X$, hence is not empty. According to Exercise 62,

$$C^{\text{subid}} := \bigcap \mathcal{C}_C^{\text{subid}} \quad (222)$$

is the smallest subidempotent correspondence containing C .

3.5.16 A weakest transitive relation stronger than ρ

Suppose that $\rho \Rightarrow \sigma$ and σ is a transitive relation. This is equivalent to

$$\Gamma_\rho \subseteq \Gamma_\sigma \quad \text{and} \quad \Gamma_\sigma \in \mathcal{P}^{\text{subid}}(X \times X).$$

Then

$$\Gamma_\rho \subseteq \left(\Gamma_\rho\right)^{\text{subid}} \subseteq \Gamma_\sigma,$$

which is equivalent to

$$\rho \Rightarrow \rho' \Rightarrow \sigma$$

where ρ' is any relation with graph $(\Gamma_\rho)^{\text{subid}}$.

In particular, we established that, for any relation $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$, there exists a *weakest transitive relation stronger than ρ* . Its graph is the smallest subidempotent correspondence containing Γ_ρ .

3.5.17 A weakest reflexive relation stronger than ρ

Exercise 63 Show that ρ is reflexive if and only if

$$\Gamma_\rho \supseteq \Delta_X. \quad (223)$$

Exercise 64 Show that, for a reflexive relation ρ , one has

$$\Gamma_\rho \subseteq \Gamma_\rho \circ \Gamma_\rho. \quad (224)$$

Exercise 65 Let $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$. Show that

$$\text{if } \rho \Rightarrow \sigma \text{ and } \sigma \text{ is reflexive, then } \rho \Rightarrow \rho \vee = \Rightarrow \sigma. \quad (225)$$

Here $\rho \vee =$ denotes the alternative of ρ and the equality relation on X .

In other words, for any relation $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$, relation $\rho \vee =$ is a *weakest reflexive relation stronger than ρ* .

Exercise 66 Show that ρ is a preorder if and only if

$$\Gamma_\rho \circ \Gamma_\rho = \Gamma_\rho, \quad (226)$$

i.e., Γ_ρ is an idempotent in semigroup $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \circ)$.

3.5.18 A weakest preorder stronger than ρ

Since the intersection of any family of correspondences containing Δ_X contains Δ_X , the intersection of any family of idempotents, i.e., subidempotents containing Δ_X , is an idempotent.

Thus,

$$\bigcap \{D \subseteq X \times X \mid D \circ D = D \text{ and } D \supseteq C\} \quad (227)$$

is the smallest idempotent correspondence containing C .

Exercise 67 Let $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$. Show that there exists a preorder ρ' satisfying the following universal property:

$$\text{if } \rho \Rightarrow \sigma \text{ and } \sigma \text{ is a preorder, then } \rho \Rightarrow \rho' \Rightarrow \sigma. \quad (228)$$

In other words, for any relation $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$, there exists a *weakest preorder stronger than ρ* .

3.5.19 A weakest symmetric relation stronger than ρ

Exercise 68 Show that ρ is symmetric if and only if its graph Γ_ρ is τ -invariant, i.e.,

$$\Gamma_\rho \subseteq \tau_* \Gamma_\rho. \quad (229)$$

Exercise 69 Show that (229) implies (and therefore is equivalent to) the stronger condition

$$\Gamma_\rho = \tau_* \Gamma_\rho. \quad (230)$$

In other words, a relation ρ is symmetric if and only if its graph is a fixed point of τ_* .

Exercise 70 Let $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$.

$$\text{if } \rho \Rightarrow \sigma \text{ and } \sigma \text{ is symmetric, then } \rho \Rightarrow \rho \vee \rho^{\text{op}} \Rightarrow \sigma. \quad (231)$$

In other words, for any relation $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$, relation $\rho \vee \rho^{\text{op}}$ is a *weakest symmetric relation stronger than ρ* .

Exercise 71 Show that ρ is an equivalence relation if and only if Γ_ρ is a τ -invariant idempotent in $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \Delta_X, \circ)$.

3.5.20 A weakest equivalence relation stronger than ρ

Intersection of any family of τ -invariant subsets of $\mathcal{P}(X \times X)$ is τ -invariant. Thus,

$$\bigcap \{D \subseteq X \times X \mid D \circ D = D, D \subseteq \tau_* D \text{ and } D \supseteq C\} \quad (232)$$

is the smallest τ -invariant idempotent correspondence containing C .

Exercise 72 Let $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$. Show that there exists an equivalence relation ρ' satisfying the following universal property:

$$\text{if } \rho \Rightarrow \sigma \text{ and } \sigma \text{ is an equivalence relation, then } \rho \Rightarrow \rho' \Rightarrow \sigma. \quad (233)$$

In other words, for any relation $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$, there exists a *weakest equivalence relation stronger than ρ* .

3.5.21

Exercise 73 Show that ρ is antisymmetric if and only if

$$\Gamma_\rho \cap \tau_* \Gamma_\rho = \emptyset. \quad (234)$$

Exercise 74 Show that ρ is weakly antisymmetric if and only if

$$\Gamma_\rho \cap \tau_* \Gamma_\rho \subseteq \Delta_X. \quad (235)$$

Exercise 75 Show that ρ is an order relation if and only if Γ_ρ is an idempotent in $(\mathcal{P}(X \times X), \Delta_X, \circ)$ and

$$\Gamma_\rho \cap \tau_* \Gamma_\rho = \Delta_X.$$

3.6 Morphisms between structures of functional type

3.6.1

Suppose that a set X is equipped with a family of functions

$$\mathcal{O} \subset \text{Funct}(X, \mathbf{R})$$

and a set X' is equipped with a family of functions

$$\mathcal{O}' \subset \text{Funct}(X', \mathbf{R}).$$

We say that a function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ is a morphism if, for every $\phi' \in \mathcal{O}'$, the composite function $f^* \phi' = \phi' \circ f$ belongs to \mathcal{O} ,

$$\forall \phi' \in \mathcal{O}' \quad f^* \phi' \in \mathcal{O}. \quad (236)$$

3.6.2

An equivalent form of condition (236) is

$$(f^*)_* \mathcal{O}' \subset \mathcal{O}. \quad (237)$$

This, in turn, can be expressed in the language of diagrams: a function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ is a morphism if the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{O} & & \mathcal{O}' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{Funct}(X, \mathbf{R}) & \xleftarrow{f^*} & \text{Funct}(X', \mathbf{R}) \end{array}$$

admits a completion to a commutative square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{O} & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \mathcal{O}' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \text{Funct}(X, \mathbf{R}) & \xleftarrow{f^*} & \text{Funct}(X', \mathbf{R}) \end{array}$$

3.7 Morphisms between structures of topological type

3.7.1

Suppose that a set X is equipped with a family of subsets $\mathcal{A} \subset \mathcal{P}X$ and a set X' is equipped with a family of subsets $\mathcal{A}' \subset \mathcal{P}X'$. We say that a function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ is a morphism if the preimage under f of every member of family \mathcal{A}' is a member of \mathcal{A} ,

$$\forall_{A' \in \mathcal{A}'} f^* A' \in \mathcal{A}. \quad (238)$$

3.7.2

An equivalent form of condition (238) is

$$(f^*)_* \mathcal{A}' \subset \mathcal{A}. \quad (239)$$

Notice the similarity to condition (237).

3.7.3

Condition (239) can be expressed by saying that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{A} & & \mathcal{A}' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{P}Y & \xleftarrow{f^*} & \mathcal{P}Y' \end{array}$$

admits a completion to a commutative square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{A} & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \mathcal{A}' \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathcal{P}Y & \xleftarrow{f^*} & \mathcal{P}Y' \end{array}$$

3.7.4 Continuous functions

When \mathcal{A} and \mathcal{A}' have the meaning of being the families of *open subsets* in a topological spaces, i.e., when (X, \mathcal{A}) and (X', \mathcal{A}') are topological spaces, cf. Section 2.1.6, we obtain the definition of a morphism between topological spaces. This is precisely how a continuous function is defined.

3.7.5 Measurable functions

When \mathcal{A} and \mathcal{A}' have the meaning of being the families of *measurable subsets* in a measurable spaces, i.e., when (X, \mathcal{A}) and (X', \mathcal{A}') are measurable spaces, cf. Section 2.1.7, we obtain the definition of a morphism between measurable spaces. This is precisely how a measurable function is defined.

3.7.6

Another condition that can be interpreted as saying that f respects distinguished families of subsets reads

$$\forall_{A \in \mathcal{A}} f_* A \in \mathcal{A}' \quad (240)$$

or, equivalently,

$$(f_*)_* \mathcal{A} \subset \mathcal{A}' . \quad (241)$$

Either condition can serve as a definition of a morphism between structures of topological type. It is however the former, (238), that plays a fundamental role in Topology and Measure Theory, not the latter, (240).

4 The language of categories

4.1 The concept of a category

4.1.1

Whatever definition of a morphism between mathematical structures one adopts, it always has the following features

- any morphism α has a *source* and a *target* that are mathematical structures of the same type
- if the source $s(\alpha)$ of a morphism α coincides with the target $t(\beta)$ of a morphism β , then their composition $\alpha \circ \beta$ is defined and

$$t(\alpha \circ \beta) = t(\alpha) \quad \text{and} \quad s(\alpha \circ \beta) = s(\beta)$$

- composition of morphisms is associative, i.e.,

$$(\alpha \circ \beta) \circ \gamma = \alpha \circ (\beta \circ \gamma)$$

for any composable list α, β, γ of morphisms

4.1.2

The above observations led to the introduction of the concept of a *category*. In a nutshell, a *category* \mathcal{C} consists of two classes, a class \mathcal{C}_o of *objects* and a class \mathcal{C}_1 of *morphisms*, equipped with an associative operation of composition of morphisms.

4.1.3

Various classes of mathematical structures equipped with appropriate classes of morphisms form natural categories. Studying the category of groups is what Group Theory does. Studying the category of rings is what Ring Theory does. Algebraic geometers study the category of *algebraic varieties* and the bigger category of *algebraic schemes*. Topologists study the category of *topological spaces*, and so on.

4.1.4

Every mathematical theory can be expressed in a categorical language. This usually provides an added degree of clarity to a theory and yields insights that are otherwise lost.

4.2 Basic vocabulary

4.2.1 Epimorphisms

A morphism α is said to be a *epimorphism* if, for any diagram

$$\bullet \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{\phi} \\ \xleftarrow{\psi} \end{array} \bullet \xleftarrow{\alpha} \bullet, \quad (2.4.2)$$

equality $\phi \circ \alpha = \psi \circ \alpha$ implies $\phi = \psi$.

Exercise 76 Show that the composite of two epimorphisms is an epimorphism.

Exercise 77 Show that if $\alpha \circ \beta$ is an epimorphism, then α is an epimorphism.

Exercise 78 Show that a function f is an epimorphism in the category of sets if and only if f is surjective.

4.2.2 Monomorphisms

A morphism α is said to be a *monomorphism* if, for any diagram

$$\bullet \xleftarrow{\alpha} \bullet \xleftarrow[\psi]{\phi} \bullet, \quad (243)$$

quality $\alpha \circ \phi = \alpha \circ \psi$ implies $\phi = \psi$.

Exercise 79 Show that the composite of two monomorphisms is a monomorphism.

Exercise 80 Show that if $\alpha \circ \beta$ is a monomorphism, then β is a monomorphism.

Exercise 81 Show that a function f is a monomorphism in the category of sets if and only if f is injective.

4.2.3 Initial objects

An object i is said to be *initial* if, for every object c , there exists a unique morphism $i \rightarrow c$.

4.2.4 Terminal objects

An object t is said to be *terminal* if, for every object c , there exists a unique morphism $c \rightarrow t$.

4.3 Endomorphisms

4.3.1

Morphisms whose source and target coincide with an object c are referred as *endomorphisms* of object c .

4.3.2 The identity endomorphism

Let ι be an endomorphism of an object c such that

$$\forall_{\alpha} \ s(\alpha)=c \Rightarrow \alpha \circ \iota = \alpha$$

and

$$\forall_{\beta} \ t(\beta)=c \Rightarrow \iota \circ \beta = \beta.$$

We shall call it an *identity endomorphism*.

Exercise 82 Suppose that ι and ι' are identity endomorphisms of an object c . Show that $\iota = \iota'$.

It follows that, if c admits an identity endomorphism, then it is unique. We denote this unique identity endomorphism id_c or $\mathbf{1}_c$.

4.3.3 Unital categories

A category is said to be *unital* if every object admits an identity endomorphism.

4.3.4 A right inverse of a morphism

We say that β is a *right inverse* of a morphism α if

$$s(\alpha) = t(\beta), \quad t(\alpha) = s(\beta) \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha \circ \beta = \text{id}_{t(\alpha)}.$$

Existence of the identity endomorphism $\text{id}_{t(\alpha)}$ is a necessary condition for α to be right-invertible.

4.3.5 Split epimorphisms

Exercise 83 Show that a right-invertible morphism is an epimorphism.

On this account, we call a right-invertible morphism a *split epimorphism*. A *splitting* of an epimorphism is, by definition, any of its right inverses.

Exercise 84 Show that the composite of two split epimorphisms is a split epimorphism.

4.3.6 A left inverse of a morphism

We say that β is a *left inverse* of a morphism α if

$$s(\alpha) = t(\beta), \quad t(\alpha) = s(\beta) \quad \text{and} \quad \beta \circ \alpha = \text{id}_{s(\alpha)}.$$

Existence of the identity endomorphism $\text{id}_{s(\alpha)}$ is a necessary condition for α to be left invertible.

4.3.7 Split monomorphisms

Exercise 85 Show that a left-invertible morphism is a monomorphism.

On this account, we call a left-invertible morphism a *split monomorphism*. A *splitting* of a monomorphism is, by definition, any of its left inverses.

4.3.8 The inverse of a morphism

Exercise 86 Let β be a right inverse of α and β' be a left inverse of α . Show that $\beta = \beta'$.

Solution. In view of associativity of composition of morphisms, one has

$$\beta = \text{id}_{s(\alpha)} \circ \beta = (\beta' \circ \alpha) \circ \beta = \beta' \circ (\alpha \circ \beta) = \beta' \circ \text{id}_{t(\alpha)} = \beta'.$$

□

It follows that existence of a (two-sided) inverse of α is equivalent to existence of a right and of a left inverse. Moreover, a two-sided inverse is unique when it exists. We denote it α^{-1} .

4.3.9 Isomorphisms

An invertible morphism, i.e., a morphism that admits an inverse, is called an *isomorphism*. Objects c and d are said to be *isomorphic* if there exists an isomorphism $c \rightarrow d$. Symbolically, this is expressed by $c \simeq d$.

4.3.10

According to Exercise 86 an isomorphism is morphism that is, at once, a split epimorphism and a split monomorphism.

4.3.11 Arrow notation

We signal that a morphism $\alpha : c \rightarrow d$ is a monomorphism, an epimorphism, or an isomorphism, by employing the following arrow notation

$$\text{monomorphism} \quad \alpha : c \rightarrowtail d \quad (244)$$

$$\text{epimorphism} \quad \alpha : c \twoheadrightarrow d \quad (245)$$

$$\text{isomorphism} \quad \alpha : c \xrightarrow{\sim} d. \quad (246)$$

4.3.12 The semigroup of endomorphisms

Equipped with composition as its binary operation, the set of endomorphisms of an object c of any category becomes a semigroup, denoted

$$\text{End}_{\mathcal{C}} c. \quad (247)$$

The semigroups of endomorphisms of various mathematical structures play a fundamental role in nearly every area of Mathematics and Mathematical Physics.

4.3.13 The monoid of endomorphisms

If object c admits an identity endomorphism, then

$$(\text{End}_{\mathcal{C}} c, \text{id}_c, \circ)$$

is a monoid. For example, the monoid of unary operations $\text{Op}_1(X)$ on a set X is precisely the monoid of endomorphisms of X viewed as an object of the category of sets.

4.3.14 The group of automorphisms

An invertible endomorphism of c is called an *automorphism*. The set $\text{Aut}_{\mathcal{C}} c$ of automorphisms of c contains id_c and is closed under the operations of composition and passing to the inverse element. It coincides with the group of invertible elements in the monoid $\text{End}_{\mathcal{C}} c$ of endomorphisms of c .

4.3.15 An action of a set A on an object of a category

If A is a set and c is an object of a category \mathcal{C} , we have a ready definition of an *action of A on c* if we notice that $\text{Op}_1(X)$ in (159) coincides with the monoid of endomorphisms of X in the category of sets. Thus, an action of a set A on an object c is defined to be a function

$$L : A \longrightarrow \text{End}_{\mathcal{C}} c. \quad (248)$$

4.3.16 An action of a binary structure (A, \cdot) on an object of a category

We say that a binary structure (A, \cdot) acts on an object c if the function in (248) is a homomorphism of binary structures.

4.3.17 An action of a monoid (A, e, \cdot) on an object of a unital category

We say that a monoid (A, \cdot) acts on an object c of a unital category if the function in (248) is a homomorphism of monoids.

4.3.18 Representation Theory of Groups

Classical Representation Theory studies group actions on the objects of the category of vector spaces over a field k . Such actions are referred to as *k -linear representations* of a given group. The cases $k = \mathbf{R}$ and $k = \mathbf{C}$ produce Real and, respectively, Complex Representation Theory.

4.3.19 Category of k -linear representations of a group

Given a group G , its k -linear representations form naturally objects of a category, and determination of the structure of that category is a central topic of Representation Theory.

4.3.20

Representation Theory has been, beginning from its roots in Linear Algebra in the latter part of 19th Century, an essential area of Mathematics, that had enormous impact on the development of Mathematical Physics in 20th Century. The sheer wealth of the methods it employs and applications it produces is a reason why learning Representation Theory is simultaneously obligatory and takes several years of very intensive study.

5 Quotient structures

5.1 The concept of a quotient set

5.1.1 The equivalence class $[x]_\eta$ of an element $x \in X$

Let $\eta \in \text{Rel}_2 X$ be an equivalence relation on a set X and $x \in X$. We denote by

$$[x]_\eta := \{y \in X \mid \eta(x, y)\} \quad (249)$$

the set of elements y that are η -related to x . We refer to (249) as the η -equivalence class of x .

5.1.2 The quotient set $X/_\eta$

We shall denote by

$$X/_\eta := ([]_\eta)_* X \quad (250)$$

the image of the function

$$[]_\eta : X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}X, \quad x \longmapsto [x]_\eta. \quad (251)$$

We shall refer to (250) as the *quotient of X by equivalence relation η* , and we shall call the function induced by (251)

$$[]_\eta : X \longrightarrow X/_\eta, \quad x \longmapsto [x]_\eta, \quad (252)$$

the (canonical) *quotient map*. By definition, (252) is surjective.

5.1.3

If θ is an equivalence relation stronger than η , then

$$\forall_{x \in X} [x]_\eta \subseteq [x]_\theta$$

and $[x]_\theta$ is the union of η -equivalence classes $[y]_\eta$ of elements that are θ -equivalent to x . In particular, assignment

$$x \longmapsto [x]_\theta \quad (x \in X)$$

factorizes

$$x \longmapsto [x]_\eta \longmapsto [x]_\theta$$

and, if we denote the corresponding function $X/_\eta \longrightarrow X/_\theta$ by $[]_{\eta\theta}$, then we obtain the commutative triangle diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & X & \\ []_\eta \swarrow & & \searrow []_\theta \\ X/_\eta & \xrightarrow{[]_{\eta\theta}} & X/_\theta \end{array} . \quad (253)$$

5.1.4 The fiber equivalence relation $=_f$

Let $f : X \rightarrow X'$ be an arbitrary function. We shall denote the pull-back to X of the equality relation on X' by $=_f$,

$$x =_f y \quad := \quad "f(x) = f(y)" , \quad (254)$$

and we shall call $=_f$ the *fiber equivalence relation* associated with function f .

5.1.5 The canonical factorization of a function $f : X \rightarrow X'$

Let $\iota_f : f_*X \hookrightarrow X'$ be the inclusion function.

Lemma 5.1 *Every function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ is represented as the composite*

$$f = \iota_f \circ \tilde{f} \circ [\]_{=f} \quad (255)$$

for a unique bijection $\tilde{f} : X_{|=f} \rightarrow f_*X$.

The assertion of Lemma 5.1 is illustrated by the following commutative square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & X' \\ \downarrow [\]_{=f} & & \uparrow \iota_f \\ X_{|=f} & \xrightarrow[\tilde{f}]{} & f_*X \end{array} \quad (256)$$

Proof. Suppose that

$$\iota_f \circ g \circ [\]_{=f} = \iota_f \circ h \circ [\]_{=f}. \quad (257)$$

In view of ι_f being a monomorphism, cf. Exercise 81, Equality (257) implies that

$$g \circ [\]_{=f} = h \circ [\]_{=f}. \quad (258)$$

In view of $[\]_{=f}$ being an epimorphism, cf. Exercise 78, Equality (257) implies that $g = h$. This proves uniqueness of \tilde{f} .

For an element $E \in X_{|=f}$, the restriction of f to E is a constant function. Denote by $\tilde{f}(E)$ the single value of $f|_E$. This defines a function $\tilde{f} : X_{|=f} \rightarrow f_*X$ such that $f = \iota_f \circ \tilde{f} \circ [\]_{=f}$.

Suppose that $\tilde{f}(E) = \tilde{f}(F)$ for some $E, F \in X_{|=f}$. Then $f(x) = f(y)$ for arbitrary $x \in E$ and $y \in F$. It follows that $x \in F$ and $y \in E$, i.e., $E = F$. In other words, \tilde{f} is injective. Since \tilde{f} has the same image as f , function \tilde{f} is surjective. \square

5.1.6 The quotient of X by an arbitrary binary relation

Let $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$ be an arbitrary binary relation on a set X and η_ρ be a weakest equivalence relation stronger than ρ , cf. Section 3.5.20. We shall denote by $[x]_\rho$ the equivalence class $[x]_{\eta_\rho}$ and we shall denote by $X_{|\rho}$ the quotient set $X_{|\eta_\rho}$.

5.1.7 The universal property of the canonical quotient map

Lemma 5.2 *Let $f : X \rightarrow X'$ be a function satisfying the following condition*

$$\forall_{x,y \in X} f(x) = f(y). \quad (259)$$

Then there exists a unique function $\tilde{f} : X_{|\rho} \rightarrow X'$, such that

$$f = \tilde{f} \circ [\]_\rho. \quad (260)$$

Exercise 87 Prove uniqueness of \tilde{f} .

Proof. Here we prove existence of \tilde{f} . Condition (259) means that relation ρ is weaker than relation $=_f$. In particular, $=_f$ is stronger than a weakest equivalence relation η_ρ stronger than ρ . Hence, according to (253), canonical quotient map $[\]_{=_f}$ factorizes

$$[\]_{=_f} = [\]_{\eta_\rho, =_f} \circ [\]_{\eta_\rho}.$$

Note that, by definition, $[\]_\rho = [\]_{\eta_\rho}$. By combining this with factorization (255), we obtain equality (260) if we put

$$\tilde{f} := \iota_f \circ \tilde{f} \circ [\]_{\eta_\rho, =_f}.$$

□

5.1.8 Morphisms $(X, \rho) \longrightarrow (X', =)$

Notice that functions $f : X \rightarrow X'$ satisfying Condition (259) are nothing but morphisms of binary relational structures

$$(X, \rho) \longrightarrow (X', =). \quad (261)$$

Lemma 5.2 thus establishes a canonical bijection between morphisms (261) and arbitrary functions

$$X_{/\rho} \longrightarrow X'.$$

5.1.9 Morphisms $(X', =) \longrightarrow (X, \rho)$

Let

$$X^{\setminus \rho} := \{x \in X \mid \rho(x, x)\}. \quad (262)$$

Exercise 88 Show that a function $g : X' \rightarrow X$ is a morphism

$$(X', =) \longrightarrow (X, \rho) \quad (263)$$

if and only if

$$g_* X \subseteq X^{\setminus \rho}.$$

5.1.10

Accordingly, morphisms (263) factorize

$$g = \iota_g \circ \underline{g}$$

where \underline{g} is the function $X' \rightarrow X^{\setminus \rho}$ induced by g .

Correspondence $g \leftrightarrow \underline{g}$ defines a canonical bijection between the set of morphisms (263) and the set of arbitrary functions

$$X' \longrightarrow X^{\setminus \rho}.$$

5.1.11 Duality between the concepts of a subset and of a quotient set

The axioms of Set Theory provide just one mechanism to produce subsets of a given set X : for a given *unary* relation $\sigma \in \text{Rel}_1 X$ form its graph,

$$\Gamma_\sigma = \{x \in X \mid \sigma(x)\}. \quad (264)$$

Note that the graph of σ coincides with $X^{\setminus \rho}$,

$$\Gamma_\sigma = X^{\setminus \rho},$$

for the binary relation

$$\rho(x, y) = "x=y \wedge \sigma(x)".$$

Note that the graph of ρ is the direct image of Γ_σ under the diagonal function, cf. (211),

$$\Gamma_\rho = \Delta_* \Gamma_\sigma.$$

The dual nature of the universal properties of the canonical inclusion map $X^{\setminus \rho} \hookrightarrow X$ and of the canonical quotient map $X \twoheadrightarrow X_{/\rho}$ reveals the dual nature of the concepts of a subset and of a quotient set.

5.2 Congruence relations

5.2.1 Congruence equivalence relations

Let (X, μ) be an n -ary algebraic structure. We say that an equivalence relation η on X is a μ -congruence equivalence if

$$\forall_{\substack{x_1, \dots, x_n \\ y_1, \dots, y_n}} \eta(x_1, y_1) \wedge \dots \wedge \eta(x_n, y_n) \Rightarrow \eta(\mu(x_1, \dots, x_n), \mu(y_1, \dots, y_n)). \quad (265)$$

In other words, η is a congruence equivalence if replacing entries in the argument list

$$x_1, \dots, x_n$$

by η -equivalent entries

$$y_1, \dots, y_n$$

produces η -equivalent results when we apply operation μ to both argument lists.

5.2.2 The quotient structure $(X_{/\eta}, \bar{\mu})$

An equivalence relation η is a μ -congruence equivalence if and only if the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_{/\eta}, \dots, X_{/\eta} & & X_{/\eta} \\ \uparrow [\]_\eta & \dots & \uparrow [\]_\eta \\ X, \dots, X & \xrightarrow{\mu} & X \end{array} \quad (266)$$

can be completed to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 X_{/\eta}, \dots, X_{/\eta} & \xrightarrow{\bar{\mu}} & X_{/\eta} \\
 \uparrow \scriptstyle [\]_{\eta} & \dots & \uparrow \scriptstyle [\]_{\eta} \\
 X, \dots, X & \xrightarrow{\mu} & X
 \end{array} \quad (267)$$

We refer to $(X_{/\eta}, \bar{\mu})$ as the *quotient* of (X, μ) by a congruence relation η .

5.2.3 The operation $\bar{\mu}$ on $X_{/\eta}$ induced by μ

The value

$$[\mu(x_1, \dots, x_n)]_{\eta} \quad (x_1, \dots, x_n \in X_{/\eta})$$

is the equivalence class

$$[\mu(x_1, \dots, x_n)]_{\eta} \quad (268)$$

where $x_1 \in E_1, \dots, x_n \in E_n$. In view of η being a μ -congruence, class (268) does not depend on the choice of representatives of classes E_1, \dots, E_n .

5.2.4 $(X_{/\eta}, (\bar{\mu}_i)_{i \in I})$

Let $(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$ be a general algebraic structure. We say that η is a *congruence equivalence* if η is a μ_i -congruence equivalence for every $i \in I$. We refer to $(X_{/\eta}, (\bar{\mu}_i)_{i \in I})$ as the *quotient* of $(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$ by congruence equivalence η .

5.2.5 General congruence relations

We say that an arbitrary binary relation $\rho \in \text{Rel}_2 X$ is a μ -congruence if a weakest equivalence relation η_ρ stronger than ρ , is a μ -congruence equivalence.

The corresponding quotient structures $(X_{/\rho}, \bar{\mu})$ and $(X_{/\rho}, (\bar{\mu}_i)_{i \in I})$ are formed with respect to congruence equivalence η_ρ .

5.2.6 A criterion for a binary relation to be a μ -congruence

Here is a simple criterion of ρ being a μ -congruence relation.

Let x_1, \dots, x_n be any argument list. Let us replace any entry x_j by an element y_j such that

$$\rho(x_j, y_j). \quad (269)$$

Then

$$\eta_\rho \left(\mu(x_1, \dots, x_n), \mu(x_1, \dots, x_{j-1}, y_j, x_{j+1}, \dots, x_n) \right).$$

5.3 Group congruence equivalences

5.3.1 Adjoint action of a group G on $\mathcal{P}G$

Assignment

$$g \mapsto (\text{ad}_g)_*, \quad E \mapsto {}^g E := gEg^{-1}, \quad (270)$$

defines a function

$$\text{ad}_* : G \longrightarrow \text{Op}_1 \mathcal{P}X, \quad g \mapsto (\text{ad}_g)_*. \quad (271)$$

5.3.2 Normal subsets

We say that a subset $E \subseteq G$ of a group G is *normal* if it is a fixed point of the adjoint action, i.e.,

$$\forall_{g \in G} {}^g E = E.$$

Exercise 89 Show that $E \subseteq G$ is a normal subset if and only if

$$\forall_{g \in G} {}^g E \subseteq E.$$

Solution. Note that

$${}^g E \subseteq E \iff E \subseteq {}^{g^{-1}} E.$$

Since the inverse-element operation is bijective, we have

$$\left(\forall_{g \in G} {}^g E \subseteq E \right) \iff \left(\forall_{g \in G} E \subseteq {}^g E \right).$$

□

5.3.3

Let η be a congruence equivalence on a group $(G, e, (\)^{-1}, \cdot)$

Exercise 90 Show that $[e]_\eta$ is a normal subgroup of G .

Solution. Below we shall use abbreviated notation $[x] = [x]_\eta$. Since η is a congruence equivalence for the inverse-element operation, one has

$$\forall_{x \in [e]} x^{-1} \in [e^{-1}] = [e],$$

i.e., $[e]$ is closed under the inverse-element operation.

Since η is a congruence equivalence for the operation of multiplication, one has

$$\forall_{x, y \in [e]} xy \in [e \cdot e] = [e],$$

i.e., $[e]$ is closed under multiplication, and

$$\forall_{x \in [e]} \forall_{g \in G} gxg^{-1} \in [geg^{-1}] = [e],$$

i.e., $[e]$ is closed under conjugation by an arbitrary element $g \in G$.

□

5.3.4 Coset equivalence relations

Given a subgroup $H \subseteq G$, we define two coset relations

$$x \sim_H y := "x \in Hy" \quad \text{and} \quad x_H \sim y := "xH \ni y" \quad (272)$$

Exercise 91 Show that both \sim_H and \sim_H are equivalence relations.

Exercise 92 Show that H is a normal subgroup if and only if

$$\forall_{x \in G} xH = Hx.$$

Exercise 93 Show that both \sim_H is a congruence equivalence on a group G if and only if H is a normal subgroup.

Exercise 94 Show that any equivalence relation η on a group G is equipotent to \sim_H where $H := [e]_\eta$.

5.3.5 The quotient group G/H

When H is a normal subgroup of a group G , we signal this by employing notation

$$H \triangleleft G. \quad (273)$$

The quotient group $G_{/\sim_H}$ is denoted G/H .

5.3.6 The kernel of a group homomorphism

Exercise 95 Show that the fiber equivalence $=_f$ of a group homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow G'$ is a group congruence.

The equivalence class $[e]_{=_f}$ of the identity element in G is, accordingly, a normal subgroup. It is called the *kernel* of f and is denoted $\text{Ker } f$.

5.3.7 The image of a group homomorphism

The direct image of G under a group homomorphism f is referred to as the *image* of f and is denoted $\text{Im } f$.

5.3.8 The canonical factorization of a group homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow G'$

For group homomorphisms, Lemma 5.1 acquires the following form.

Lemma 5.3 Every group homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow G'$ is represented as the composite

$$f = \iota_f \circ \tilde{f} \circ [\]_{=_f} \quad (274)$$

for a unique isomorphism $\tilde{f} : G/\text{Ker } f \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Im } f$.

The assertion of Lemma 5.3 is illustrated by the following commutative square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} G & \xrightarrow{f} & G' \\ [\]_{=_f} \downarrow & & \uparrow \iota_f \\ G/\text{Ker } f & \xrightarrow[\tilde{f}]{\sim} & \text{Im } f \end{array} \quad (275)$$

5.4 Ring congruence equivalences

5.4.1

Let η be a congruence equivalence on a ring $(R, \circ, -, +, \cdot)$. Here

$$x \mapsto -x \quad (x \in R)$$

denotes the additive inverse operation.

In view of Exercise 90, the equivalence class of zero, $[0]_\eta$, is a subgroup of the additive group $(R, \circ, -, +)$.

5.4.2 Ideals

We say that a subgroup J of the additive group of a ring is a *right*, respectively, a *right ideal*, if

$$\forall_{r \in R} Jr \subseteq J, \quad \text{respectly,} \quad rJ \subseteq J.$$

When both conditions hold, we say that J is a *twosided ideal*.

Exercise 96 Show that $[0]_\eta$ is a twosided ideal in R .

5.4.3

A congruence equivalence η on a ring $(R, \circ, -, +, \cdot)$ is, in particular, a congruence equivalence on its additive group. Hence, η is equipotent to the coset relation \sim_J where $J = [0]_\eta$.

Exercise 97 Show that \sim_J is a congruence equivalence on a ring $(R, \circ, -, +, \cdot)$ if and only if J is a twosided ideal in R .

5.4.4 The quotient ring R/J

When J is a twosided ideal the quotient ring R/\sim_J is denoted R/J .

5.4.5 The kernel of a ring homomorphism

Exercise 98 Show that the fiber equivalence $=_f$ of a ring homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow G'$ is a ring congruence.

The equivalence class $[e]_{=_f}$ of the identity element in R is, accordingly, a twosided ideal. It is called the *kernel of f* and is denoted $\text{Ker } f$.

5.4.6 The canonical factorization of a ring homomorphism $f : R \rightarrow R'$

For ring homomorphisms, Lemma 5.1 acquires the following form.

Lemma 5.4 Every ring homomorphism $f : G \rightarrow R'$ is represented as the composite

$$f = \iota_f \circ \tilde{f} \circ [\]_{=_f} \quad (276)$$

for a unique isomorphism $\tilde{f} : R/\text{Ker } f \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{Im } f$.

The assertion of Lemma 5.3 is illustrated by the following commutative square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & \xrightarrow{f} & R' \\ \downarrow \iota_{\text{Ker } f} & & \uparrow \iota_f \\ R/\text{Ker } f & \xrightarrow{\tilde{f}} & \text{Im } f \end{array} \quad (277)$$

5.4.7 The lattice of ideals $\Lambda(R)$

In what follows by an “ideal” we shall mean a *two-sided* ideal. Denote by $\Lambda(R)$ the subset of $\mathcal{P}R$ consisting of all ideals in a ring R .

Exercise 99 Show that intersection

$$\bigcap \mathcal{J}$$

of any family of ideals $\mathcal{J} \subseteq \Lambda(R)$ is an ideal.

5.4.8 The sum of a family of ideals $\sum \mathcal{J}$

Given a family $\mathcal{J} \subseteq \Lambda(R)$ of ideals, let us denote by $\sum \mathcal{J}$ be the *additive* span of the union of \mathcal{J} ,

$$\bigcup \mathcal{J}.$$

Elements of $\sum \mathcal{J}$ are represented, not necessarily uniquely, as finite sums

$$\sum_{j \in \mathcal{J}'} x_j \quad (\mathcal{J}' \text{ an arbitrary finite subfamily of } \mathcal{J}).$$

Exercise 100 Show that $\sum \mathcal{J}$ is an ideal.

By construction, $\sum \mathcal{J}$ is the smallest ideal that contains every member of \mathcal{J} .

5.4.9

A general construction that we have encountered several times before, that employs intersection of the family of ideals containing every member of family \mathcal{J}

$$\{I \in \Lambda(R) \mid \forall_{J \in \mathcal{J}} I \supseteq J\},$$

guarantees existence of the smallest ideal that contains all members of \mathcal{J} .

We just encountered the situation when this smallest *upper bound* of \mathcal{J} in the ordered set $\Lambda(R)$ admits a simple explicit description.

5.4.10 Functorial properties of $\Lambda(R)$

Let $f : R \rightarrow R'$ be a ring homomorphism.

Exercise 101 Show that for any ideal J' in R' , the preimage $f^* J'$ is an ideal in R .

Exercise 102 Show that if f is surjective, then the direct image $f_* J$ of any ideal J in R is an ideal in R' .

Exercise 103 Show that if f is surjective, then f_* induces a bijection

$$\{J \in \Lambda(R) \mid J \supset \text{Ker } f\} \longleftrightarrow \Lambda(R'). \quad (278)$$

5.5 The K -group construction

5.5.1 Stable equivalence of formal differences

Let $(A, +)$ be a commutative semigroup. Consider the Cartesian square $A \times A$ of A equipped with the relation

$$\rho((a, b), (a', b')) := "a + b' = a' + b" \quad (279)$$

and the componentwise addition operation

$$(a, b) + (a', b') := (a + a', b + b'). \quad (280)$$

We think of pairs (a, b) as *formal* differences $a - b$. Relation ρ describes formal differences that would represent the same element of A if such an element existed.

Exercise 104 Let $a, b, c, d, a', b' \in A$. Show that

$$\rho((a, b), (a', b')) \Rightarrow \rho((a, b) + (c, d), (a', b') + (c, d)).$$

It follows that relation ρ is a $+$ -congruence. It is reflexive and symmetric. It is *not* transitive, however, unless operation $+$ is *cancellative*, cf. Section (2.2.5).

5.5.2 Stabilization

Consider a relation slightly stronger than ρ ,

$$\hat{\rho}((a, b), (a', b')) := " \exists_{c \in A} a + b' + c = a' + b + c ". \quad (281)$$

Relation $\hat{\rho}$ is obtained by replacing the equality relation $=$ in the definition of ρ by the stronger *stable equality* relation

$$x =^{\text{st}} y := " \exists_{z \in A} x + z = y + z ". \quad (282)$$

Mathematicians refer to the operation on $\text{Rel}_2 A$,

$$\rho \mapsto \hat{\rho},$$

as *stabilization*.

Exercise 105 Show that $\hat{\rho}$ is transitive.

In particular, $\hat{\rho}$ is an equivalence relation stronger than ρ . If η is any equivalence relation stronger than ρ , then

$$\rho \circ \rho \Rightarrow \eta \circ \eta \Rightarrow \eta. \quad (283)$$

Exercise 106 Show that $\hat{\rho} \Rightarrow \rho \circ \rho$.

By combining this with (283), we deduce that $\rho \circ \rho$ and $\hat{\rho}$ are equipotent. In particular, $\rho \circ \rho$ is an equivalence relation even when ρ is not, and both $\rho \circ \rho$ and $\hat{\rho}$ are weakest equivalence relations stronger than ρ .

5.5.3 The K -group of a commutative semigroup

Denote by $K(A, +)$ the quotient set $(A \times A)_{/\rho}$ and let $(K(A, +), +)$ be the corresponding quotient semigroup. To simplify notation, we shall denote the class $[(a, b)]_\rho$ by $[a - b]$. We shall assume below that $A \neq \emptyset$.

Exercise 107 Show that, for any $c \in A$, class $[c - c]$ is an identity element in $K(A, +)$.

Exercise 108 Show that, for any $a, b \in A$, class $[a - b]$ has an inverse in $K(A, +)$.

It follows that $K(A, +)$ is, in fact, an abelian group.

5.5.4 Canonical homomorphism $\delta : (A, +) \longrightarrow (K(A, +), +)$

Let $c \in A$ be an arbitrary element of A . Let

$$\delta : A \longrightarrow K(A, +), \quad a \longmapsto [(a + c) - c] \quad (284)$$

Exercise 109 Show that

$$\forall_{a,c,d} [(a + c) - c] = [(a + d) - d].$$

In particular, δ does not depend on the choice of an element $c \in A$, hence is canonically associated with semigroup $(A, +)$.

Exercise 110 Show that $\delta : (A, +) \longrightarrow (K(A, +), +)$ is a homomorphism.

5.5.5 Universal property of $\delta : (A, +) \longrightarrow (K(A, +), +)$

By construction, one has the following identity in $K(A, +)$,

$$[a - b] + \delta(b) = [a - b] + [(b + c) - c] = [(a + b + c) - (b + c)] = \delta(a). \quad (285)$$

It follows that any element of group $(A, +)$ is the sum of an element of $\delta_* A$ and of the inverse of an element of $\delta_* A$. In other words, the image of homomorphism δ generates $K(A, +)$ and therefore any group homomorphism $\phi : K(A, +) \longrightarrow G$ is uniquely determined by the composite $\phi \circ \delta$.

Lemma 5.5 Given a group $(G, e, (\)^{-1}, \cdot)$, precomposition with δ defines

$$\delta^* : \phi \longmapsto f := \phi \circ \delta \quad (286)$$

defines a bijection between the set of group homomorphisms

$$\phi : K(A, +) \longrightarrow G$$

and the set of semigroup homomorphisms

$$f : (A, +) \longrightarrow (G, \cdot).$$

Proof. Injectivity of (286) is a consequence of group $K(A, +)$ being generated by the image of δ . Let

$$\varphi : A \times A \longrightarrow G, \quad (a, b) \longmapsto f(a)f(b)^{-1} \quad (287)$$

Exercise 111 Show that $\varphi : (A \times A, +) \longrightarrow (G, \cdot)$ is a semigroup homomorphism.

Exercise 112 Show that

$$\varphi(a, b) = \varphi(a', b')$$

whenever

$$\rho((a, b), (a', b')) = 1.$$

It follows that φ induces a homomorphism from the quotient semigroup $(K(A, +))$ to semigroup (G, \cdot) .

Exercise 113 Suppose that $(G, e, (\cdot)^{-1}, \cdot)$ and $(G', e', (\cdot)^{-1}, \cdot)$ are groups. Show that, for any semigroup homomorphism

$$f : (G', \cdot) \longrightarrow (G, \cdot),$$

one has

$$f(e') = e \quad \text{and} \quad \forall_{x \in G'} f(x^{-1}) = f(x)^{-1}.$$

In other words, a semigroup homomorphism between groups is automatically a group homomorphism.

The proof of Lemma 5.5 is complete.

5.5.6

Suppose that a secondary binary operation \cdot on A is given. Let us define the following operation on $A \times A$,

$$(a, b) \cdot (c, d) := (ac + bd, ad + bc). \quad (288)$$

Exercise 114 Show that operation (288) is associative if operation \cdot on A is associative.

Exercise 115 Show that operation (288) left-distributes over addition on $A \times A$ if operation \cdot on A left-distributes over addition on A .

Exercise 116 Show that $(1, 0)$ is the identity element for operation (288) if 1 is an identity element for \cdot on A and $(A, +)$ is a cancellative semigroup, cf. Section 2.2.5.

Exercise 117 Show that

$$\forall_{a,b,c,d,a',b' \in A} \rho((a, b), (a', b')) = 1 \implies \rho((a, b) \cdot (c, d), (a', b') \cdot (c, d)) = 1$$

if operation \cdot on A right-distributes over operation $+$ on A .

5.5.7

It follows that $K(A, +, \cdot)$ for a semiring is automatically equipped with the structure of a ring.

5.5.8

If $(A, \mathbf{1}, +, \cdot)$ is a unital semiring, then $[(\mathbf{1} + c) - c]$ is a multiplicative identity in $K(A, +, \cdot)$.

5.5.9 The ring of integers $(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{1}, +, \cdot)$

The ring of integers $(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{1}, +, \cdot)$ is defined as

$$K(\mathbf{N}, \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{1}, +, \cdot).$$

We identify elements $[n - \mathbf{0}] \in \mathbf{Z}$ with $n \in \mathbf{N}$ and we denote elements $[\mathbf{0} - n] \in \mathbf{Z}$ by $-n$.

Euclid's Lemma 3.1 extends to the set of integers.

Lemma 5.6 *For every $m \in \mathbf{Z}$ and $n \in \mathbf{N} \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}$, there exist unique $q \in \mathbf{Z}$ and $r \in \mathbf{N}$ such that*

$$m = qn + r \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{0} \leq r < n. \quad (289)$$

We shall still refer to Lemma 5.6 as Euclid's Lemma even though neither Euclid, nor other mathematicians of Classical Period considered *negative* numbers.

Proof. Apply Lemma 3.1 to $-m$ if $m < \mathbf{0}$,

$$-m = qn + r.$$

If $r = \mathbf{0}$, then

$$m = (-q)n$$

is the desired representation. If $\mathbf{0} < r < n$, then

$$m = (-\mathbf{1} - q)n + (n - r)$$

is such a representation.

If

$$m = q'n + r' \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{0} \leq r' < n$$

is another representation and $q \leq q'$, then

$$\mathbf{0} \leq (q' - q)n = r - r' \leq r < n$$

and, therefore,

$$\mathbf{0} \leq q' - q < \mathbf{1},$$

in view of the multiplicative semigroup $(\mathbf{N} \setminus \{\mathbf{0}\}, \cdot)$ being cancellative, cf. Section 3.3.10. It follows that $q' - q = \mathbf{0}$ and, therefore also $r - r' = \mathbf{0}$. \square

5.5.10 Subgroups of the additive group of integers

As a corollary of Lemma 5.6 we obtain a complete description of additive subgroups $A \subseteq \mathbf{Z}$. It contains If A is not the trivial subgroup $\{0\}$, then A contains $a \neq 0$ and then either a or $-a$ belong to $\mathbf{N} \setminus \{0\}$. Thus, $A \cap (\mathbf{N} \setminus \{0\})$ is a nonempty subset of \mathbf{N} and, therefore, it has the smallest element, say n .

Let $m \in A$. In representation (289) both m and qn belong to A , hence $r \in A$. Since $0 \leq r < n$ and n is the smallest positive element of A , it follows that $r = 0$, i.e., $A = (n)$.

Corollary 5.7 *Every subgroup A of the additive group of integers has the form*

$$(n) := \mathbf{Z}n = \{m \in \mathbf{Z} \mid \exists_{q \in \mathbf{Z}} m = qn\} \quad (290)$$

for a unique $n \in \mathbf{N}$.

□

Note that every subgroup A of \mathbf{Z} is canonically isomorphic to \mathbf{Z} ,

$$\mathbf{Z} \xrightarrow[\sim]{\times n} (n) . \quad (291)$$

5.5.11 The greatest common divisor of a subset $E \subseteq \mathbf{Z}$

Given a set of integers $E \subseteq \mathbf{Z}$, let (E) denote the additive subgroup of \mathbf{Z} generated by E . The natural number $n \in \mathbf{N}$ such that

$$(E) = (n)$$

is called the *greatest common divisor* of E and is denoted $\gcd E$.

5.5.12 The least common multiple of a subset $E \subseteq \mathbf{Z}$

The least common multiple of a set of integers $E \subseteq \mathbf{Z}$ is the natural number $n \in \mathbf{N}$ such that

$$\bigcap_{m \in E} (m) = (n) .$$

We denote it $\text{lcm } E$.

5.5.13 The lattice of ideals of the ring of integers $(\mathbf{Z}, 0, 1, +, \cdot)$

Note that every additive subgroup of \mathbf{Z} is closed under multiplication by integers, hence is an ideal in the ring of integers. As an ordered set $(\Lambda(\mathbf{Z}), \subseteq)$ is isomorphic to the set of natural numbers $(\mathbf{N}, |^{\text{op}})$ equipped with the *opposite* divisor relation:

$$\forall_{m, n \in \mathbf{N}} (m) \subseteq (n) \Leftrightarrow n | m . \quad (292)$$

5.6 (Central) localization of a ring

5.6.1 Central multiplicative subsets in a ring

Let S be a multiplicatively closed subset of a ring $(R, 0, -, +, \cdot)$. We call it *central* if S is contained in the *center* of R ,

$$Z(R) := \{z \in R \mid \forall_{r \in R} rz = zr\} \quad (293)$$

5.6.2 S -fractions

We shall represent elements of $R \times S$ as *formal* fractions

$$\frac{r}{s} \quad (r \in R, s \in S).$$

5.6.3 Calculus of S -fractions

Multiplication of fractions is defined to be the product operation on $R \times S$,

$$\frac{r}{s} \cdot \frac{r'}{s'} := \frac{rr'}{ss'}. \quad (294)$$

Addition of fractions is defined by the familiar formula

$$\frac{r}{s} + \frac{r'}{s'} := \frac{rs' + sr'}{ss'}. \quad (295)$$

5.6.4 The algebraic structure $\text{Frac}_S(R)$ of S -fractions

We shall denote by $\text{Frac}_S(R)$ the algebraic structure

$$(R \times S, +, \cdot). \quad (296)$$

Associativity of multiplication of fractions is an immediate consequence of associativity of multiplication in ring R .

5.6.5

Addition of fractions is not associative, in general. Neither is multiplication right- or left-distributive over addition.

5.6.6

If R has a multiplicative identity element 1 , then the fraction

$$\frac{1}{1}$$

is a multiplicative identity element in $\text{Frac}_S(R)$, the fraction

$$\frac{0}{1}$$

is an additive identity element, and

$$\frac{r}{1} + \frac{-r}{1} = \frac{0}{1},$$

i.e., fractions with denominator 1 are additively invertible. On the other hand, fractions with denominator $\neq 1$ are not additively invertible.

5.6.7

Consider the multiplicative version of relation (279)

$$\rho\left(\frac{r}{s}, \frac{r'}{s'}\right) := "rs' = sr'" . \quad (297)$$

Exercise 118 Let $r_1, r'_1, r_2 \in R$ and $s_1, s'_1, s_2 \in S$. Show that

$$\rho\left(\frac{r_1}{s_1}, \frac{r'_1}{s'_1}\right) \Rightarrow \rho\left(\frac{r_1}{s_1} \cdot \frac{r_2}{s_2}, \frac{r'_1}{s'_1} \cdot \frac{r_2}{s_2}\right) .$$

Exercise 119 Let $r_1, r'_1, r_2 \in R$ and $s_1, s'_1, s_2 \in S$. Show that

$$\rho\left(\frac{r_1}{s_1}, \frac{r'_1}{s'_1}\right) \Rightarrow \rho\left(\frac{r_1}{s_1} + \frac{r_2}{s_2}, \frac{r'_1}{s'_1} + \frac{r_2}{s_2}\right) .$$

It follows that relation ρ is a congruence for both multiplication and addition of S -fractions. Relation ρ is reflexive and symmetric. It is *not* transitive, however, if the operations of multiplication by elements of S are not injective.

5.6.8 Multiplicative stabilization

Consider a relation slightly stronger than ρ ,

$$\rho^S\left(\frac{r}{s}, \frac{r'}{s'}\right) := " \exists_{t \in S} rs't = sr't " . \quad (298)$$

Relation ρ^S is obtained by replacing the equality relation $=$ in the definition of ρ by the stronger *multiplicatively stable equality* relation

$$x =^S y := " \exists_{t \in S} xs = yt " . \quad (299)$$

Exercise 120 Show that ρ^S is transitive.

In particular, ρ^S is an equivalence relation stronger than ρ .

Exercise 121 Show that $\rho^S \Rightarrow \rho \circ \rho$.

By combining this with (283), we deduce that $\rho \circ \rho$ and ρ^S are equipotent. In particular, $\rho \circ \rho$ is an equivalence relation even when ρ is not, and both $\rho \circ \rho$ and ρ^S are weakest equivalence relations stronger than ρ .

5.6.9 $R[S^{-1}]$

Let $R[S^{-1}]$ be the quotient by ρ of the algebraic structure $\text{Frac}_S(R)$ of S -fractions.

Exercise 122 Show that

$$\left[\frac{0}{s} \right]$$

is an additive identity element of $R[S^{-1}]$ and

$$\left[\frac{s}{s} \right]$$

is a multiplicative identity.

Exercise 123 Show that addition in $R[S^{-1}]$ is associative.

5.6.10

Since

$$\frac{r}{s} + \frac{-r}{s} = \frac{0}{s},$$

every element of $R[S^{-1}]$ is additively invertible and the additive structure of $R[S^{-1}]$ is an abelian group.

Exercise 12.4 Show that multiplication distributes over addition in $R[S^{-1}]$.

In other words, $R[S^{-1}]$ is a unital ring. It is often called, not entirely correctly, the *ring of S -fractions*. We shall refer to it as the S -localization of R .

Exercise 12.5 Describe $R[S^{-1}]$ when $S \ni 0$.

5.6.11 Canonical homomorphism $\lambda : R \longrightarrow R[S^{-1}]$

Let $s \in S$ be an arbitrary element of S . Let

$$\lambda : R \longrightarrow R[S^{-1}], \quad r \longmapsto \left[\frac{rs}{s} \right]. \quad (300)$$

Exercise 12.6 Show that

$$\forall_{r \in R} \forall_{s, t \in S} \left[\frac{rs}{s} \right] = \left[\frac{rt}{t} \right].$$

In particular, λ does not depend on the choice of an element $s \in S$, hence is canonically associated with ring R and multiplicative subsemigroup S of (R, \cdot) .

Exercise 12.7 Show that $\lambda : R \longrightarrow R[S^{-1}]$ is a ring homomorphism.

5.6.12 Universal property of $\lambda : R \longrightarrow R[S^{-1}]$

We say that a homomorphism $f : R \longrightarrow R'$ into a unital ring R' *inverts* elements of S if

$$\forall_{s \in S} f(s) \text{ is invertible in } R'.$$

Lemma 5.8 Given a unital ring R' , precomposition with λ defines

$$\lambda^* : \phi \longmapsto f := \phi \circ \lambda \quad (301)$$

defines a bijection between the set of ring homomorphisms

$$\phi : R[S^{-1}] \longrightarrow R'$$

and the set of ring homomorphisms

$$f : R \longrightarrow R'$$

that invert elements of S .

5.6.13 Zero divisors

We say that a nonzero element $r \in R$ is a *right zero divisor* if there exists a nonzero element $q \in R$ such that

$$qr = 0.$$

In this case q is said to be a *left zero divisor*.

5.6.14 Domains

A ring without zero divisors is called by ring theorists a *domain*. Commutative rings with identity and without zero divisors are also called *integral domains*.

5.7 Commutative Algebra

5.7.1

Theory of commutative unital rings developed into a separate area of Mathematics situated between Algebra and Geometry. It is called “Commutative Algebra” and has been one of the vital fields of research over the last century.

5.7.2 Notation: $\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b}, \dots$

Let A denote a commutative unital ring. In Commutative Algebra ideals of A are traditionally denoted by lower case Fraktur letters $\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b}, \dots$.

5.7.3 Notation: (a_1, \dots, a_n)

The smallest ideal in A containing a subset E is denoted (E) . We write

$$(a_1, \dots, a_n) \tag{302}$$

when $E = \{a_1, \dots, a_n\}$.

Exercise 128 Show that

$$a \in (a_1, \dots, a_n) \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \exists_{c_1, \dots, c_n \in A} \quad a = c_1 a_1 + \dots + c_n a_n. \tag{303}$$

5.7.4 Principal ideals

Ideals generated by a single element are called *principal*.

5.7.5 Principal ideal domains

Integral domains with all ideals being principal are called *principal ideal domains*. The ring of integers \mathbb{Z} is an example, cf. Section 5.5.13.

5.7.6 Prime ideals

A proper ideal $\mathfrak{p} \subsetneq A$ is said to be *prime* if its complement $\mathbb{C}\mathfrak{p}$ is closed under multiplication.

Exercise 129 Show that \mathfrak{p} is prime if and only if A/\mathfrak{p} is an integral domain.

Solution. Note that $\mathfrak{p} = [0]$ is the zero element in the quotient ring A/\mathfrak{p} and

$$[a] = [0] = \mathfrak{p} \Leftrightarrow ab \in \mathfrak{p}.$$

Accordingly, \mathfrak{p} being a prime ideal is equivalent to

$$\forall_{a,b \in A} [ab] = \mathfrak{p} \Leftrightarrow [a] = \mathfrak{p} \vee [b] = \mathfrak{p}.$$

□

5.7.7 Localization of A at a prime ideal \mathfrak{p}

The ring $A[(\mathbb{C}\mathfrak{p})^{-1}]$ is called the *localization of A at a prime ideal \mathfrak{p}* and is denoted $A_{\mathfrak{p}}$.

5.7.8

In particular, a commutative unital ring A is an integral domain precisely when the zero ideal (0) is prime.

5.7.9 The field of fractions of an integral domain

If A is an integral domain, then the localization of A at the zero ideal $A_{(0)}$ is a field. This field is called, not entirely correctly, the *field of fractions* of integral domain A .

5.7.10 The prime spectrum $\text{Spec } A$ of a commutative unital ring A

The set of *proper* prime ideals of A is called the *prime spectrum of A* and is denoted

$$\text{Spec } A.$$

5.7.11 Functorial properties of prime ideals

Let $f : A \rightarrow A'$ be a homomorphism of commutative unital rings and \mathfrak{p}' be a prime ideal in A' .

Exercise 130 Show that $f^*\mathfrak{p}'$ is a prime ideal in A .

Assignment

$$A \mapsto \text{Spec } A \tag{304}$$

is *functorial*. This means that every homomorphism of commutative unital rings $f : A \rightarrow A'$ induces a canonical function

$$\text{Spec } A \xleftarrow{f^*} \text{Spec } A'. \tag{305}$$

Since assignment $f \mapsto f^*$ reverses the source and the target, we say that the double assignment

$$A \mapsto \text{Spec } A, \quad f \mapsto f^*, \tag{306}$$

is a *contravariant functor* from the category of commutative unital rings to the category of ordered sets.

5.7.12 Zariski closed subsets $V(E) \subseteq \text{Spec } A$

Let us consider the function

$$V : \mathcal{P}A \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}(\text{Spec } A), \quad E \longmapsto V(E) := \{\mathfrak{p} \in \text{Spec } A \mid \mathfrak{p} \supseteq E\}, \quad (307)$$

that assigns to a subset $E \subseteq A$, the set of prime ideals containing E . It is a morphism of ordered sets

$$V : (\mathcal{P}A, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}(\text{Spec } A), \supseteq). \quad (308)$$

Exercise 131 Show that, for any family of subsets $\mathcal{E} \subseteq \mathcal{P}A$, one has

$$V\left(\bigcup \mathcal{E}\right) = \bigcap_{E \in \mathcal{E}} V(E) = \bigcap V_* \mathcal{E}. \quad (309)$$

5.7.13

In the language of ordered sets Identity (309) reads: function (308) is a *sup-exact morphism* of ordered sets, cf. Section 6.11.3.

5.7.14

When $E = \{a\}$ is a singleton set, we denote $V(E)$ by $V(a)$. Note that

$$V(0) = \text{Spec } A \quad \text{and} \quad V(1) = \emptyset. \quad (310)$$

Exercise 132 Show that, for any $a, a' \in A$, one has

$$V(a) \cup V(a') = V(aa'). \quad (311)$$

Lemma 5.9 For any subsets $E, E' \subseteq A$, one has

$$V(E) \cup V(E') = V(EE') \quad (312)$$

where $EE' := \{b \in A \mid \exists a \in E \exists a' \in E' \ b = aa'\}$.

Proof. Straightforward calculation employing distributivity of \cap over \cup yields

$$\begin{aligned} V(E) \cup V(E') &= V\left(\bigcup_{a \in E} \{a\}\right) \cup V\left(\bigcup_{a' \in E'} \{a'\}\right) \\ &= \left(\bigcap_{a \in E} V(a)\right) \cup \left(\bigcap_{a' \in E'} V(a')\right) \\ &= \bigcap_{\substack{a \in E \\ a' \in E'}} V(a) \cup V(a') \\ &= \bigcap_{\substack{a \in E \\ a' \in E'}} V(aa') \\ &= V(EE'). \end{aligned}$$

In the third equality we used Exercise 132. □

5.7.15 Zariski topology

Denote by \mathcal{Z} the image of morphism V , cf. (307) or (308),

$$\mathcal{Z} := V_*\mathcal{P}A \subseteq \mathcal{P}(\mathrm{Spec} A). \quad (313)$$

In view of Exercise 131, family \mathcal{Z} is closed under arbitrary intersections. In view of Lemma 5.9 and the second formula in (310), family \mathcal{Z} is closed under finite unions.

Such a family of subsets has the meaning of the family of all *closed subsets* in a *topological space*, cf. Section 7.1.18. This topological structure on the prime spectrum of a commutative unital ring was introduced by Alexander Grothendieck who named it *Zariski topology*.

Exercise 133 Let $f : A \rightarrow A'$ be a homomorphism of unital rings. Show that, for any subset $E \subseteq A$, one has

$$f^{**}V(E) = V(f_*E). \quad (314)$$

Identity (314) expresses commutativity of the square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}(\mathrm{Spec} A) & \xrightarrow{f^{**}} & \mathcal{P}(\mathrm{Spec} A') \\ \uparrow V & \circlearrowleft & \uparrow V \\ \mathcal{P}A & \xrightarrow{f_*} & \mathcal{P}A' \end{array} \quad (315)$$

Solution. One has

$$\begin{aligned} f^{**}V(E) &= \{\mathfrak{p}' \in \mathrm{Spec} A' \mid f^*\mathfrak{p}' \in V(E)\} \\ &= \{\mathfrak{p}' \in \mathrm{Spec} A' \mid f^*\mathfrak{p}' \supseteq E\} \\ &= \{\mathfrak{p}' \in \mathrm{Spec} A' \mid \mathfrak{p}' \supseteq f_*E\} \\ &= V(f_*E). \end{aligned}$$

In the second equality we used the fact that f_*, f^* form a *Galois connection*, cf. Exercise 22. \square

It follows that the preimage of any Zariski closed subset of $\mathrm{Spec} A$ by f^* is a Zariski closed subset of $\mathrm{Spec} A'$. In Topology this property of a function is known as *continuity*.

Double assignment (306) thus becomes a functor from the category of commutative unital rings to the category of topological spaces.

5.7.16 Spec \mathbf{Z}

Every prime ideal in the ring of integers \mathbf{Z} is the principal ideal (n) generated by 0 or by a prime natural number $p \in \mathbf{N}$.

A proper subset $Z \subsetneq \mathrm{Spec} \mathbf{Z}$ is Zariski closed if and only if it is a finite subset not containing (0). On the other hand, $\mathrm{Spec} \mathbf{Z}$ is the smallest Zariski closed subset containing (0).

6 Binary relations

6.1 Preliminaries

6.1.1 Canonical identification $\mathbf{Rel}(X, Y) \longleftrightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(Y, X)$

Given a binary relation

$$\rho : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad (316)$$

the *opposite* relation is defined by flipping the two arguments

$$\rho^{\text{op}} : Y, X \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad y, x \mapsto \rho(x, y). \quad (317)$$

Note that $(\rho^{\text{op}})^{\text{op}} = \rho$. In particular, assignment

$$\rho \mapsto \rho^{\text{op}}$$

defines a canonical identification of the sets of binary relations

$$\mathbf{Rel}(X, Y) \longleftrightarrow \mathbf{Rel}(Y, X).$$

6.1.2 A canonical involution on $\mathbf{Rel}_2(X)$

When $X = Y$, operation $()^{\text{op}}$ is a (canonical) involution on the set of binary relations on X .

6.2 Morphisms between binary relations

6.2.1 The definition expressed in terms of a \Rightarrow -commutative diagram

The concept of a morphism between n -ary relations was subjected to a thorough analysis in Section 3.4. That analysis led us to focus on three types of morphisms: \Rightarrow -morphisms, \Leftarrow -morphisms, and \Leftrightarrow -morphisms.

For $n = 2$, in all three cases a morphism from a binary relation

$$\rho : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$$

to a binary relation

$$\rho' : X', Y' \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$$

consists of a pair of functions $f : X \rightarrow X'$ and $g : Y \rightarrow Y'$ such that

$$\rho \Rightarrow (f, g)^* \rho', \quad \rho \Leftarrow (f, g)^* \rho', \quad \text{and, respectively,} \quad \rho \Leftrightarrow (f, g)^* \rho'.$$

This triple definition of a morphism can be expressed by means of the corresponding diagrams

$$(\Rightarrow\text{-morphism}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & X', Y' & \\ \uparrow f & & \searrow \rho' \\ & X, Y & \nearrow \rho \\ & & \text{Statements} \end{array} \quad (318)$$

$$(\Leftarrow\text{-morphism}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X', Y' & \xrightarrow{\rho'} & \text{Statements} \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow g & \curvearrowright & \uparrow \rho \\ X, Y & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \end{array} \quad (319)$$

$$(\Leftrightarrow\text{-morphism}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X', Y' & \xrightarrow{\rho'} & \text{Statements} \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow g & \curvearrowright & \uparrow \rho \\ X, Y & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \end{array} \quad (320)$$

6.2.2

Below we shall follow the common practice, explained in Section 3.4.11, of referring to \Rightarrow -morphisms simply as *morphisms*, and to \Leftrightarrow -morphisms as *strict morphisms*.

6.2.3 Morphisms between binary relational structures

When $X = Y$, $X' = Y'$ and $f = g$, we obtain the corresponding definitions of a \sim -morphism, where \sim is \Rightarrow , \Leftarrow , or \Leftrightarrow , from a binary relational structure (X, ρ) to a binary relational structure (X, ρ') , cf. Section 3.4.13.

6.3 Membership relation \in is a universal relation

6.3.1

Membership relation

$$\in : S, \mathcal{P}S \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad s, E \longmapsto "s \in E", \quad (321)$$

associated with an arbitrary set S , and its opposite relation \ni , are the *only* relations whose existence is guaranteed by axioms of Set Theory. In other words, \in is the only primitive relation of all of Mathematics. Remarkably, it is also a *universal* binary relation,

Theorem 6.1 (a) *For every binary relation ρ , there exists a set S and a \Leftrightarrow -morphism $\rho \rightarrow \in_S$,*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X, Y & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \text{Statements} \\ \downarrow g \quad \downarrow f & \curvearrowright & \uparrow \in \\ S, \mathcal{P}S & \xrightarrow{\in} & \end{array}, \quad (322)$$

i.e., ρ is equipotent to a pull-back of membership relation on some set S .

(b) *There exists a \Leftrightarrow -morphism (322) with $S = X$ and $f = \text{id}_X$, and such a morphism is unique. In particular, there exists a canonical bijective correspondence*

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Equipotence classes of binary relations} \\ \rho : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements} \end{array} \right\} \longleftrightarrow \text{Funct}(Y, \mathcal{P}X) \quad (323)$$

which sends a function $g : Y \rightarrow \mathcal{P}X$ to the equipotence class of the pulled-back relation $(\text{id}_X, g)^ \in$.*

6.3.2

Part (a) of Theorem 6.1 is a consequence of Part (b). The pulled-back relation $(\text{id}_X, g)^* \in$ has the form

$$x, y \longmapsto "x \in g(y)" . \quad (324)$$

If $h : Y \rightarrow \mathcal{P}X$ is another function and $g \neq h$, then there exists $a \in X$ such that sets $g(a)$ and $h(a)$ differ,

$$g(a) \neq h(a) .$$

It follows that there exists $x \in X$ such that

$$\text{either } x \in g(a) \text{ and } x \notin h(a) \text{ or } x \notin g(a) \text{ and } x \in h(a) .$$

The same expressed symbolically,

$$\exists_{x \in X} (x \in g(a) \wedge x \notin h(a)) \vee (x \notin g(a) \wedge x \in h(a)) .$$

In particular, the corresponding pulled-back relations are not equipotent.

6.3.3 Two set-of-relatives functions

Given a binary relation (316), there are two evaluation functions canonically associated with it

$$\text{ev}_1^1 \rho : X \longrightarrow \text{Rel}_1(Y) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{ev}_2^2 \rho : Y \longrightarrow \text{Rel}_1(X)$$

cf. (12). By composing them with the graph functions

$$\text{Rel}_1(Y) \xrightarrow{\Gamma} \mathcal{P}Y \quad \text{and} \quad \text{Rel}_1(X) \xrightarrow{\Gamma} \mathcal{P}X ,$$

we obtain a pair of functions

$$X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}Y, \quad x \longmapsto [x]_\rho := \{y \in Y \mid \rho(x, y)\}, \quad (325)$$

and, respectively,

$$Y \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}X, \quad y \longmapsto {}_\rho[y] := \{x \in X \mid \rho(x, y)\}. \quad (326)$$

When the context allows that, we shall simplify notation by omitting the subscript denoting the relation. We shall refer to $[x]$ as the set of *right relatives* of $x \in X$, and to $[_\rho y]$ as the set of *left relatives* of $y \in Y$.

Accordingly, we shall refer to (325) as the *right-relatives* function, and to (326) as the *left-relatives* function.

6.3.4

The pair of assignments

$$\begin{array}{c} \rho \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ []_{\rho} \quad \rho \langle [] \end{array} \quad (327)$$

defines the pair of functions

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{Rel}(X, Y) \\ \swarrow \quad \searrow \\ \text{Funct}(X, \mathcal{P}Y) \quad \text{Funct}(Y, \mathcal{P}X) \end{array} \quad (328)$$

Exercise 134 Show that

$$\rho^{\text{op}} \langle [] = []_{\rho} \quad \text{and} \quad []_{\rho^{\text{op}}} = \rho \langle [] .$$

6.3.5

The pulled-back relation $(\text{id}_X, \rho \langle [])^* \in$,

$$x, y \mapsto "x \in_{\rho} [y]" ,$$

is, by the definition of $_{\rho} \langle y]$, equipotent to $_{\rho}$. This completes a proof of Theorem 6.1.

6.3.6 The $\exists \rho \in$ -diagram

Our proof exhibits a \Leftrightarrow -commutative diagram canonically associated with every binary relation $_{\rho}$,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}Y, Y & & \\ \uparrow \parallel & \searrow \exists & \\ [] & & \text{Statements} \\ \downarrow \parallel & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \uparrow \parallel \\ X, Y & & \\ \downarrow \parallel & \nwarrow \epsilon & \\ X, \mathcal{P}X & & \end{array} \quad (329)$$

whose deeper meaning will be revealed when we formulate the concept of a *Galois connection*, cf. Section 6.15.

6.3.7 An indispensable equipment for a modern mathematician: “algebraic glasses”

Let me pause to make a remark before resuming our excursion into the land of binary relations. Even the *nearest surroundings* of the concept of a binary relation reveal *omnipresence* of the central mechanism of Modern Mathematics, that of a *pair of adjoint functors*, cf. Section 1.1.15. That mechanism will accompany us all the way to the end of our inquiry, and will manifest itself both in *where* we get to and *how* we get there. This is one of the many miracles of Mathematics, perhaps its most important. In order to be able to see it one must, however, be wearing “algebraic glasses.”

6.3.8 Terminology: initial and terminal elements

When $[x] = Y$, we say that an element $x \in X$ is *initial* (for a given binary relation ρ). When $\langle y \rangle = X$, we say that an element $y \in Y$ is *terminal*.

When ρ is an order relation on a set X , an initial element is unique when it exists. In Theory of Ordered Sets that unique initial element is said to be the *smallest element* of (X, ρ) .

Similarly, a terminal element in an ordered set is unique when it exists. That unique element is said to be the *greatest element* of (X, ρ) .

6.3.9 The preorders on X and Y canonically associated with $\rho \in \mathbf{Rel}(X, Y)$

We shall denote by \succeq the relation \subseteq pulled-back to X from $\mathcal{P}Y$ by $[]$,

$$x \succeq x' \quad \text{if} \quad [x] \subseteq [x'] \quad (x, x' \in X). \quad (330)$$

We shall denote by \preceq the relation \subseteq pulled-back to Y from $\mathcal{P}X$ by $\langle \rangle$,

$$y \preceq y' \quad \text{if} \quad \langle y \rangle \subseteq \langle y' \rangle \quad (y, y' \in Y). \quad (331)$$

6.3.10

By construction, \succeq is the *strongest* binary relation on X such that $[] : (X, \succeq) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq)$ is a morphism. Similarly, \preceq is the *strongest* binary relation on Y such that $\langle \rangle : (Y, \preceq) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ is a morphism.

Exercise 135 Consider the relation ρ_f associated with a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ between arbitrary sets, cf. (62). Describe the relations \succeq and \preceq .

6.3.11

Suppose $X = Y$. In that case all three relations, ρ , \preceq and \succeq , are members of the same set $\mathbf{Rel}_2(X)$ of binary relations on X , which is preordered by the \implies relation. This leads to the following natural questions that I am stating as exercises.

Exercise 136 Characterize binary relations $\rho \in \mathbf{Rel}_2(X)$ such that $\rho \implies \preceq$.²

Exercise 137 Characterize binary relations $\rho \in \mathbf{Rel}_2(X)$ such that $\preceq \implies \rho$.

Exercise 138 State the analogs of the above two exercises for \succeq instead of \preceq .

² *Characterize* means: 1° Find a property of ρ , that can be stated directly in terms of ρ and is as simple as possible, that holds precisely when $\rho \implies \preceq$; 2° then prove that.

6.4 Functions $\mathcal{P}X \rightleftharpoons \mathcal{P}Y$ canonically associated with a binary relation.

6.4.1 $R : \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}Y$

Given a subset $A \subseteq X$ we obtain a family $([x])_{x \in A}$ of subsets of Y whose intersection,

$$RA := \bigcap_{x \in A} [x] = \{y \in Y \mid \forall_{x \in A} \rho(x, y)\}, \quad (332)$$

consists of those elements of Y that are right relatives of *every* element of A .

Exercise 139 Given a family $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ of subsets of X , show that

$$\bigcap R_* \mathcal{A} = R \left(\bigcup \mathcal{A} \right). \quad (333)$$

6.4.2 The set of upper bounds of a subset of an ordered set

In Theory of Ordered Sets, RA is called the *set of upper bounds of a subset* $A \subseteq X$. A subset $A \subseteq X$ is said to be *bounded above* when RA is not empty.

6.4.3 Right-directed binary relations

We say that ρ is *right-directed* if $RA \neq \emptyset$ for every *finite* subset $A \subseteq X$.

6.4.4 Directed sets

An ordered set whose order relation is right-directed is called a *directed set*. Directed sets are indispensable in all questions related to *convergence* in Topology and in Algebra.

6.4.5 Supremum of a subset

If $RA = [\alpha]$, for some element $\alpha \in X$, we shall say that α is a *supremum* of a subset $A \subseteq X$. This term is yet another adoption from Theory of Ordered Sets. A supremum of A is unique when ρ is an order relation on X . In that case we denote it

$$\sup A. \quad (334)$$

For a general relation ρ , any two suprema³ are \succeq -equivalent, cf. Section 6.3.9 and Exercise 5. One can still use notation (334) understanding, however, that the element of X denoted $\sup A$ is defined uniquely only up to a \succeq -equivalence.

6.4.6 $\mathcal{P}X \longleftarrow \mathcal{P}Y : L$

Given a subset $B \subseteq Y$ we obtain a family $([y])_{y \in B}$ of subsets of X whose intersection,

$$LB := \bigcap_{y \in B} [y] = \{x \in X \mid \forall_{y \in B} \rho(x, y)\}, \quad (335)$$

consists of those elements of X that are left relatives of *every* element of B .

³The plural of the neuter noun *supremum* is *suprema*.

6.4.7 The set of lower bounds of a subset of an ordered set

In Theory of Ordered Sets, LB is called the *set of lower bounds of a subset* $B \subseteq Y$. A subset $B \subseteq Y$ is said to be *bounded below* when LB is not empty.

6.4.8 Left-directed binary relations

We say that ρ is *left-directed* if $LB \neq \emptyset$ for every finite subset $B \subseteq Y$.

6.4.9 Infimum of a subset

If $LB = \langle \beta \rangle$, for some element $\beta \in Y$, we shall say that β is an *infimum* of a subset $B \subseteq Y$. That element is unique when ρ is an order relation on Y . In that case we denote it

$$\inf B. \quad (336)$$

For a general relation ρ , any two infima are \preceq -equivalent and the use of notation (336) is subject to the same caveat as in the case of $\sup A$.

6.4.10 $R\emptyset = Y$ and $L\emptyset = X$

Note that $R\emptyset = Y$ and $L\emptyset = X$. In particular, $\emptyset \subseteq X$ is bounded above precisely when X is not empty. Suprema of $\emptyset \subseteq X$ are precisely initial elements of X , cf. Section 6.3.8.

Similarly, $\emptyset \subseteq Y$ is bounded below precisely when Y is not empty. Infima of $\emptyset \subseteq Y$ are precisely terminal elements of Y .

Exercise 140 (a) Show that

$$RX = \{y \in Y \mid y \text{ is a terminal element of } Y\} \quad (337)$$

and

$$LY = \{x \in X \mid x \text{ is an initial element of } X\}. \quad (338)$$

(b) Show that

$$\xi \in X \text{ is a supremum of } X \iff \xi \text{ is a smallest element of preordered set } (X, \succeq) \quad (339)$$

and

$$v \in Y \text{ is an infimum of } Y \iff v \text{ is a smallest element of preordered set } (Y, \preceq). \quad (340)$$

6.4.11 Example: $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$

Given a subset $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$, i.e., a family of subsets of a set X , the union of \mathcal{A} is the smallest subset of X that contains every member of \mathcal{A} and the intersection of \mathcal{A} is the greatest subset of X that is contained in every member of \mathcal{A} . Thus, the supremum and infimum exist for every subset of the ordered set $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ and they coincide with the union and, respectively, the intersection of family \mathcal{A} ,

$$\sup \mathcal{A} = \bigcup \mathcal{A} \quad \text{and} \quad \inf \mathcal{A} = \bigcap \mathcal{A}. \quad (341)$$

6.4.12

Identity (333) and a similar identity for L can be both expressed in the form of a pair of commutative diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y \\ \cap \downarrow & \text{ } & \downarrow \cup \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y \\ \cup \uparrow & \text{ } & \uparrow \cap \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} . \quad (342)$$

Exercise 141 Consider the membership relation

$$\in : X, \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x, A \longmapsto "x \in A" . \quad (343)$$

Determine RA and LA for $A \subseteq X$ and $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$.

Exercise 142 Consider the set-containment relation (33). Determine $R\mathcal{A}$ and $L\mathcal{B}$ for $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ and $\mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$.

Exercise 143 Consider the relation ρ_f associated with a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ between arbitrary sets, cf. (62). Determine $R\mathcal{A}$ and $L\mathcal{B}$ for $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ and $\mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$.

Exercise 144 Show that R is a morphism of ordered sets $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq)$ and L is a morphism of ordered sets $(\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}X, \supseteq)$.

6.4.13 The preorders on $\mathcal{P}X$ and $\mathcal{P}Y$ canonically associated with $\rho \in \mathbf{Rel}(X, Y)$

Let us denote by $\overset{R}{\subseteq}$ the relation \supseteq pulled-back from $\mathcal{P}Y$ to $\mathcal{P}X$ by function R ,

$$A \overset{R}{\subseteq} A' \quad \text{if} \quad RA \supseteq RA' \quad (A, A' \subseteq X), \quad (344)$$

and let us denote by $\overset{L}{\subseteq}$ the relation \supseteq pulled-back from $\mathcal{P}X$ to $\mathcal{P}Y$ by function L ,

$$B \overset{L}{\subseteq} B' \quad \text{if} \quad LB \supseteq LB' \quad (B, B' \subseteq Y). \quad (345)$$

In view of the universal property of the pulled-back relation, cf. Section 3.4.13, relation $\overset{R}{\subseteq}$ is a strongest relation on $\mathcal{P}X$ for which R is a morphism into $(\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq)$. Similarly, $\overset{L}{\subseteq}$ is a strongest relation on $\mathcal{P}Y$ for which L is a morphism into $(\mathcal{P}X, \supseteq)$. By combining this remark with Exercise 144, we deduce that both $\overset{R}{\subseteq}$ and $\overset{L}{\subseteq}$ are stronger than the containment relation,

$$\subseteq \implies \overset{R}{\subseteq} \quad \text{on } \mathcal{P}X \quad (346)$$

and

$$\subseteq \implies \overset{L}{\subseteq} \quad \text{on } \mathcal{P}Y. \quad (347)$$

In the following exercises, A denotes an arbitrary subset of X and B denotes an arbitrary subset of Y .

Exercise 145 Show that

$$A \subseteq LB \quad \text{if and only if} \quad RA \supseteq B. \quad (348)$$

Exercise 146 Show that

$$A \subseteq LRA \quad \text{and} \quad RLB \supseteq B. \quad (349)$$

Exercise 147 Show that

$$LRLB = LB \quad \text{and} \quad RA = RLRA. \quad (350)$$

6.4.14

In other words, the pair of functions (L, R) satisfies the following identities

$$LRL = L \quad \text{and} \quad RLR = R, \quad (351)$$

and the unary operation LR on X , as well as the unary operation RL on Y , are *idempotent*, i.e.,

$$(LR)^2 = LR \quad \text{and} \quad (RL)^2 = RL. \quad (352)$$

Exercise 148 Show that

$$RL[x] = [x]. \quad (353)$$

Exercise 149 Show that

$$\rho(x, y) \Leftrightarrow L[x] \subseteq [y] \Leftrightarrow [x] \supseteq R[y]. \quad (354)$$

Solution. One has the following sequence of equivalences and implications

$$\rho(x, y) \Leftrightarrow [x] \ni y \Leftrightarrow [x] \supseteq \{y\} \Rightarrow L[x] \subseteq [y] \Rightarrow RL[x] \supseteq R[y] \stackrel{(353)}{\Rightarrow} [x] \supseteq R[y] \Rightarrow [x] \ni y \Leftrightarrow \rho(x, y).$$

□

6.4.15 Ordered sets $\mathcal{L}(\rho)$ and $\mathcal{R}(\rho)$

Consider the images of power-sets $\mathcal{P}Y$ and $\mathcal{P}X$ under L and, respectively, R ,

$$\mathcal{L}(\rho) := L_*\mathcal{P}Y \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{R}(\rho) := R_*\mathcal{P}X. \quad (355)$$

Exercise 150 Show that, for any subsets B_1 and B_2 of Y , one has

$$LB_1 \subseteq LB_2 \quad \text{if and only if} \quad LB_1 \stackrel{R}{\subseteq} LB_2 \quad (356)$$

and, for any subsets A_1 and A_2 of X , one has

$$RA_1 \subseteq RA_2 \quad \text{if and only if} \quad RA_1 \stackrel{L}{\subseteq} RA_2. \quad (357)$$

It follows that on $\mathcal{L}(\rho) \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ the preorder relation $\stackrel{R}{\subseteq}$ is equipotent with the order relation \subseteq , and similarly for the preorder relation $\stackrel{L}{\subseteq}$ on $\mathcal{R}(\rho) \subseteq \mathcal{P}Y$. In particular, both preorders are order relations on those two subsets of the corresponding power-sets.

6.4.16 A canonical isomorphism $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq) \simeq (\mathcal{R}(\rho), \supseteq)$

Restriction of $R : \mathcal{P}X \rightarrow \mathcal{P}Y$ to $\mathcal{L}(\rho)$ induces a morphism of ordered sets

$$(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{R}(\rho), \supseteq).$$

Similarly, restriction of $L : \mathcal{P}Y \rightarrow \mathcal{P}X$ to $\mathcal{R}(\rho)$ induces a morphism

$$(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \supseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq).$$

In view of identities (350), those two morphisms are inverse to each other.

6.4.17 Case : ρ a symmetric relation

For a symmetric relation on a set X , one has $R = L$ and Identities (351) become a single identity

$$R^3 = R. \quad (358)$$

Moreover, $\mathcal{R}(\rho) = \mathcal{L}(\rho)$ and R induces a canonical *antiinvolution* of $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$, i.e., a morphism

$$(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq) \xrightarrow{R} (\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)^{\text{op}} \quad \text{such that} \quad R \circ R = \text{id} \quad (359)$$

where $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)^{\text{op}}$ coincides with $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \supseteq)$.

6.4.18 $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ represented as $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$

When ρ is the *nonequality* relation \neq on a set X , we obtain

$$(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) = (\mathcal{L}(\neq), \subseteq) \quad \text{and} \quad R = \mathbb{C}. \quad (360)$$

Exercise 151 Prove (360).

6.5 A close look at the definition of a morphism between binary relations

6.5.1

For the *equality* relation $=$, the class of $=$ -commutative diagrams coincides with the class of commutative diagrams.

6.5.2 $2 \times 2 \times 2$ characterizations of a morphism

Let

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X', Y' & & \\ f \uparrow & \uparrow g & \\ X, Y & & \end{array} \quad (361)$$

be a pair of functions. The definition of a morphism between binary relations can be expressed in the language of \supseteq - and \subseteq -commutative diagrams and the canonical functions associated to the relations involved.

Lemma 6.2 *The following statements are equivalent:*

(mo) *Pair of functions (361) is a morphism.*

(r_{*}) *The square*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f \uparrow & \searrow \supseteq & \uparrow g_* \\ X & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (362)$$

is \supseteq -commutative.

(R_{*}) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f_* \uparrow & \searrow \scriptstyle \supseteq & \uparrow g_* \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (363)$$

is \supseteq -commutative.

(r^{*}) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f \uparrow & \searrow \scriptstyle \supseteq & \downarrow g^* \\ X & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (364)$$

is \supseteq -commutative.

(R^{*}) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f_* \uparrow & \searrow \scriptstyle \supseteq & \downarrow g^* \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (365)$$

is \supseteq -commutative.

(1_{*}) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{\langle [\]} & Y' \\ f_* \uparrow & \searrow \scriptstyle \subseteq & \uparrow g \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{\langle [\]} & Y \end{array} \quad (366)$$

is \subseteq -commutative.

(L_{*}) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f_* \uparrow & \searrow \scriptstyle \subseteq & \uparrow g_* \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (367)$$

is \subseteq -commutative.

(1^{*}) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{\langle [\]} & Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & \searrow \scriptstyle \subseteq & \uparrow g \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{\langle [\]} & Y \end{array} \quad (368)$$

is \subseteq -commutative.

(L*) *The square*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\
 f^* \downarrow & \curvearrowright & \uparrow g_* \\
 \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y
 \end{array} \quad (369)$$

is \subseteq -commutative.

Proof of (mo) \Leftrightarrow (r_{}).* For any $x \in X$ and $y' \in Y'$, one has the following equivalences of statements:

$$\exists_{y \in Y} \rho(x, y) \wedge g(y) = y' \Leftrightarrow g_*[x] \ni y'$$

and

$$\rho'(f(x), y') \Leftrightarrow [f(x)] \ni y'.$$

Hence, the conditional statement

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \rho(x, y) \wedge g(y) = y' \\
 \Downarrow \\
 \rho'(f(x), y')
 \end{array}$$

is equivalent to the conditional statement

$$\begin{array}{c}
 g_*[x] \ni y' \\
 \Downarrow \\
 [f(x)] \ni y'
 \end{array},$$

i.e.,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \exists_{y \in Y} \rho(x, y) \wedge g(y) = y' & & g_*[x] \ni y' \\
 \Downarrow & \Leftrightarrow & \Downarrow \\
 \rho'(f(x), y') & & [f(x)] \ni y'
 \end{array} \quad (370)$$

By applying, first $\forall_{y' \in Y'}$, then $\forall_{x \in X}$, to both sides of equivalence (370), we deduce equivalence of Conditions (mo) and (r_{*}). \square

Exercise 152 Prove equivalence of Conditions (r_{*}) and (R_{*}).

Exercise 153 Prove equivalence of Conditions (r_{*}) and (r^{*}).

6.5.3 2×2 characterizations of a \Leftrightarrow -morphism

Lemma 6.3 The following statements are equivalent :

(fa) Pair of functions (361) is a \Leftrightarrow -morphism , cf. Section 3.4.6.

(\mathbf{r}_c^*) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f \uparrow & \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowright} & \downarrow g^* \\ X & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (371)$$

is commutative.

(\mathbf{R}_c^*) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f_* \uparrow & \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowright} & \downarrow g_* \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (372)$$

is commutative.

(\mathbf{l}_c^*) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{[\]} & Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowleft} & \uparrow g \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{[\]} & Y \end{array} \quad (373)$$

is commutative.

(\mathbf{L}_c^*) The square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowleft} & \uparrow g_* \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (374)$$

is commutative.

Exercise 154 Prove equivalence of Conditions (fa) and (\mathbf{r}_c^*) by using the proof of equivalence of Conditions (mo) and (\mathbf{r}_*) as a model.

6.5.4 Right-saturated morphisms

We shall say that a pair (361) is a *right-saturated morphism* if square (362) commutes.

6.5.5 Left-saturated morphisms

We shall say that a pair (361) is a *left-saturated morphism* if square (366) commutes.

6.5.6 Saturated subsets

In the special case when $X \subseteq X'$ and $Y \subseteq Y'$ and f, g is the pair of canonical inclusion functions, the inclusion morphism is right-saturated precisely when every right relative in Y' of any element $x \in X$, belongs to Y .

Similarly, the inclusion morphism is left-saturated precisely when every left relative in X' of any element $y \in Y$, belongs to X .

6.5.7 Up-sets and down-sets

In Theory of Ordered Sets right-saturated subsets of an ordered set are often referred to as *up-sets* whereas left-saturated subsets are referred to as *down-sets*.

6.6 Filters

6.7

Left-directed upsets are called *filters*. Filters in $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ play a fundamental role in Topology, Algebra and Model Theory. In that case they are often referred to as filters *on* a set X . A standard definition of a filter \mathcal{F} of subsets usually requires a filter to be *proper* which is equivalent to the requirement that $\emptyset \notin \mathcal{F}$.

We shall denote the set of proper filters on a set X by $\text{Filt } X$.

6.7.1 Principal filters \mathcal{P}_A

A *principal filter* on a set X is the filter generated by a single subset $A \subseteq X$. It is the family of those subsets of X that contain A as their subset. In other words, \mathcal{P}_A coincides with the set of right relatives $[A]$ of relation \subseteq on $\mathcal{P}X$.

6.7.2 Ultrafilters

Maximal proper filters are traditionally called *ultrafilters*. Wherever the language of filters of subsets is used, ultrafilters in $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ take a central position.

6.7.3 Principal ultrafilters

Exercise 155 Show that a principal filter \mathcal{P}_A is an ultrafilter if and only if A is a singleton set $A = \{a\}$.

In this case it is common to denote $\mathcal{P}_{\{a\}}$ by \mathcal{P}_a or $\mathcal{P}_a X$.

6.7.4 Finite-Intersection Property

Exercise 156 Prove that $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ is contained in a proper filter if and only if it satisfies the following condition

$$\forall_{\text{finite } \mathcal{A}' \subseteq \mathcal{A}} \bigcap \mathcal{A}' \neq \emptyset. \quad (375)$$

Condition (375) is known as the *Finite-Intersection Property*. We shall denote by $\text{FIP}(X)$ the set of all families of subsets of X that satisfy this condition.

6.8 Right- and left-complete binary relations

6.8.1

We shall say that a binary relation ρ is *right-complete* when every subset $\mathcal{A} \subseteq X$ has a supremum, cf. Section 6.4.5, i.e.,

$$[\]_* X = \mathcal{R}(\rho). \quad (376)$$

We shall say that a binary relation ρ is *left-complete* when every subset $B \subseteq Y$ has an infimum, cf. Section 6.4.9, i.e.,

$$\langle \rangle_* Y = \mathcal{L}(\rho). \quad (377)$$

6.8.2 Bicomplete binary relations

We shall say that a binary relation ρ is *bicomplete* if it is both right- and left-complete. A central fact of our theory is comprised by the following proposition.

Proposition 6.4 *For every binary relation ρ , ordered set $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$ is bicomplete.*

Proof. Given a family \mathcal{B} of subsets of Y , intersection of family $L_*\mathcal{B} = \{LB \mid B \in \mathcal{B}\}$ is the greatest subset of X contained in each member of family $L_*\mathcal{B}$ and, according to the left commutative square in (342), is a member of $\mathcal{L}(\rho)$:

$$\bigcap L_*\mathcal{B} = L\left(\bigcup \mathcal{B}\right).$$

Every subset of $\mathcal{E} \subseteq \mathcal{L}(\rho)$ is a family of subsets of X of the form $L_*\mathcal{B}$ for some $\mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{P}Y$. Indeed,

$$\mathcal{E} = L_*(R_*\mathcal{E}).$$

It follows that every subset of $\mathcal{L}(\rho)$ has infimum in $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$. A similar argument demonstrates that every subset of $\mathcal{R}(\rho)$ has infimum in $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \subseteq)$ and, henceforth, has supremum in $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \supseteq)$.

Since $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$ is isomorphic to $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \supseteq)$, cf. Section 6.4.16, every subset of $\mathcal{L}(\rho)$ has supremum in $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$. \square

Note how elegant is the above argument.

Exercise 157 *Given $\mathcal{E} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$, find a formula for $\sup \mathcal{E}$ in $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$.*

Exercise 158 *Determine $[\]_*X$, $\langle \rangle_*Y$, $\mathcal{R}(\rho_f)$, and $\mathcal{L}(\rho_f)$, for the relation associated with a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$ between arbitrary sets, cf. (62).*

6.8.3 Restricted notions of completeness

Given a family of subsets $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$, we could say that a binary relation ρ is (right) *\mathcal{A} -complete* if

$$[\]_*X \supseteq R_*\mathcal{A} \quad (378)$$

and, similarly, given a family of subsets $\mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{P}Y$, we could say that ρ is (left) *\mathcal{B} -complete* if

$$\langle \rangle_*Y \supseteq L_*\mathcal{B}. \quad (379)$$

6.8.4 Completeness restricted to nonempty *bounded* subsets

Following the practice of Theory of Ordered Sets, let us say that a subset $A \subseteq X$ is *right-bounded* if $RA \neq \emptyset$, and a subset $B \subseteq Y$ is *left-bounded* if $LB \neq \emptyset$. Let us denote the family of all nonempty right-bounded subsets of X by

$$\mathcal{P}_{\triangleright}X := \{A \subseteq X \mid A \neq \emptyset \wedge RA \neq \emptyset\} \quad (380)$$

and the family of all nonempty right-bounded subsets of X by

$$\mathcal{P}_{\triangleleft}Y := \{B \subseteq Y \mid B \neq \emptyset \wedge LB \neq \emptyset\}. \quad (381)$$

Exercise 159 Show that the functions L and R induce mutually inverse functions

$$R_*\mathcal{P}_{\triangleright}X \xrightleftharpoons[R]{L} L_*\mathcal{P}_{\triangleleft}Y. \quad (382)$$

Lemma 6.5 If a binary relation ρ is right $\mathcal{P}_{\triangleright}X$ -complete and

$$L_*\{[x] \mid x \in X \wedge [x] \neq \emptyset\} \subseteq \langle \]_*Y, \quad (383)$$

then ρ is left $\mathcal{P}_{\triangleright}Y$ -complete.

Proof. If $B \in \mathcal{P}_{\triangleleft}Y$ and ρ is right $\mathcal{P}_{\triangleright}X$ -complete, then

$$LB = RLB = L[\alpha]$$

where $\alpha \in X$ is a supremum of RLB and $[\alpha] \supseteq B \neq \emptyset$. Condition (383) implies that $LB = L[\alpha] = \langle \beta \rangle$ for a certain $\beta \in Y$. \square

Condition (383) is obviously satisfied when ρ is a preorder relation on a set X . In that case, one has

$$\forall_{x \in X} \langle x \rangle = L[x] \wedge R\langle x \rangle = [x].$$

Corollary 6.6 A preorder relation on a set X is right $\mathcal{P}_{\triangleright}X$ -complete if and only if it is left $\mathcal{P}_{\triangleleft}X$ -complete. \square

6.8.5 Terminology: *complete* (pre)ordered sets

Such sets, in Theory of Ordered Sets, are said to be *complete*.

6.8.6 Finite completeness

The case of the family of all *finite* subsets is of particular importance. We shall refer to the corresponding binary relations as being *finitely* right-, or left-complete.

6.9 Semilattices

6.9.1 \vee -semilattices

An ordered set (X, \leq) is finitely right-complete precisely when it has the *smallest* element (frequently denoted \circ), that coincides with supremum of $\emptyset \subseteq X$, and any two-element subset has a supremum which in this case becomes a commutative binary operation on X ,

$$a, b \mapsto a \vee b := \sup\{a, b\} \quad (a, b \in X), \quad (384)$$

referred to as the *join* operation. Join is, by definition, commutative and every element is an *idempotent*,

$$\forall_{a \in X} a \vee a = a. \quad (385)$$

Exercise 160 Show that join is associative and that

$$\forall_{a \in X} \circ \vee a = a,$$

i.e., \circ is an identity element for binary operation \vee .

6.9.2 The associated monoid (X, \circ, \vee)

In Theory of Ordered Sets, finitely right-complete ordered sets are called \vee - or *join semilattices*. The associated commutative monoid (X, \circ, \vee) satisfies Identity (385). In Algebra, any commutative monoid (A, e, \cdot) such that every element is idempotent, is called a *semilattice*.

6.9.3

Connection between \vee -semilattices and semilattices in the sense of Algebra goes either way.

Exercise 161 Given a semilattice (A, e, \cdot) , define the binary relation on X ,

$$\rho : A, A \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad a, b \mapsto "ab = b". \quad (386)$$

Show that ρ is an order relation, e is the smallest element, and

$$\forall_{a, b \in A} \sup\{a, b\} = ab.$$

6.9.4

The monoid canonically associated to a \vee -semilattice, and the \vee -semilattice canonically associated to a semilattice in the sense of Algebra are constructions that are *natural*, i.e., they extend in a unique manner to a pair of *functors* between the corresponding categories.

For algebraic structures, homomorphisms provide a natural definition of a *morphism*, cf. Section 3.2.1. This does not correspond, however, to the standard definition of a morphism between ordered sets. Homomorphisms between semilattices correspond to, what we shall call below, *finitely sup-exact* morphisms.

6.9.5 \wedge -semilattices

An ordered set (X, \leq) is finitely left-complete precisely when it has the *greatest* element (frequently denoted 1), that coincides with infimum of $\emptyset \subseteq X$, and any two-element subset has a infimum which in this case becomes a commutative binary operation on X ,

$$a, b \mapsto a \wedge b := \inf\{a, b\} \quad (a, b \in X), \quad (387)$$

referred to as the *meet* operation. Like join, meet is, by definition, commutative and every element is an *idempotent*,

$$\forall_{a \in X} a \wedge a = a.$$

If (X, \leq) is a meet semilattice, then $(X, \leq)^{\text{op}}$ is a join semilattice, and vice-versa. In particular, meet is an associative operation and 1 serves as its identity element.

In Theory of Ordered Sets, finitely left-complete ordered sets are called \wedge or *meet semilattices*.

6.9.6 Terminology: lattices

In Theory of Ordered Sets, finitely bicomplete ordered sets are called *lattices*.

6.10 Complete lattices

6.10.1

In Theory of Ordered Sets, bicomplete ordered sets are called *complete lattices*.

In Section 6.4.11 we saw that power-set $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ is a complete lattice. Above we established that $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$ and $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \subseteq)$ are complete lattices for any binary relation ρ .

6.10.2 The complete lattice of algebraic substructures

Let $(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$, be an algebraic structure, cf. Section 2.2.1. A subset $A \subseteq X$ that is *closed* under every operation μ_i , $i \in I$, inherits those operations from X and is an algebraic structure of the same type. We call such “inherited” structure a *substructure* of $(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$.

The family of all subsets of X that are closed under operations μ_i forms an ordered subset of power-set $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$. We shall denote it $\text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$.

It follows immediately from the definition that intersection of any family $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ of subsets that are closed under operations μ_i is itself closed under those operations. Thus, every family of substructures has infimum.

6.10.3 An algebraic substructure generated by a subset

Given any subset $E \subseteq X$, the intersection of the family of subsets that are closed under the operations and containing E , is the *smallest* subset of X with that property. We call this the *substructure generated by a subset* $E \subseteq X$ and often denote it

$$\langle E \rangle.$$

Note that the above mentioned family is not empty: E is contained in X and X is closed under the operations by definition.

6.10.4

Given a family $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$, any substructure that contains every member of \mathcal{A} will contain also their union,

$$\bigcup \mathcal{A}. \quad (388)$$

The union of even two subsets closed under an algebraic operation is closed under that operation only in exceptional circumstances (consider for example, the union of two lines passing through the origin in the 2-dimensional vector space). The substructure generated by subset (388) of X is, obviously, the smallest substructure containing every member of family \mathcal{A} .

In conclusion, for every $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I})$, supremum and infimum exist and are given by

$$\sup \mathcal{A} = \langle \bigcup \mathcal{A} \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \inf \mathcal{A} = \bigcap \mathcal{A}. \quad (389)$$

Thus, the ordered set $(\text{Substr}(X, (\mu_i)_{i \in I}), \subseteq)$ is a complete lattice, irrespective of what family of algebraic operations we consider.

6.11 Right- and left-exact functions

6.11.1

Given binary relations ρ and ρ' as in Section 6.2.1, and an arbitrary function

$$f : X \rightarrow X',$$

we shall say that f is *right-exact* if

$$f_* : (\mathcal{P}X, \overset{\text{R}}{\subseteq}) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}X', \overset{\text{R}}{\subseteq}) \quad (390)$$

is a morphism of preordered sets, cf. Section 6.4.13. Similarly, given an arbitrary function

$$g : Y \rightarrow Y',$$

we shall say that g is *left-exact* if

$$g_* : (\mathcal{P}Y, \overset{\text{L}}{\subseteq}) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y', \overset{\text{L}}{\subseteq}) \quad (391)$$

is a morphism of preordered sets.

6.11.2 Exact functions between binary relational structures

When $X = Y$, $X' = Y'$ and a function f is both right- and left-exact, we shall say that f is *exact*.

6.11.3 sup- and inf-exact functions

We shall say that f is *sup-exact* if, for every subset $A \subseteq X$ that has a supremum, say $\alpha \in X$, its image under f has $f(\alpha)$ as a supremum. Similarly, we shall say that g is *inf-exact* if, for every subset $B \subseteq Y$ that has an infimum, say $\beta \in Y$, its image under g has $g(\beta)$ as a supremum.

Exercise 162 Show that

$$\forall_{x_1, x_2 \in X} \sup\{x_1, x_2\} = x_1 \Leftrightarrow x_1 \succeq x_2 \quad (392)$$

and

$$\forall_{y_1, y_2 \in Y} \inf\{y_1, y_2\} = y_1 \Leftrightarrow y_1 \preceq y_2. \quad (393)$$

Exercise 163 Show that a sup-exact function f is a morphism of preordered sets

$$f : (X, \succeq) \longrightarrow (X', \succeq). \quad (394)$$

Show that an inf-exact function g is a morphism of preordered sets

$$g : (Y, \preceq) \longrightarrow (Y', \preceq). \quad (395)$$

Proposition 6.7 A right-exact function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ is sup-exact. If ρ is right-complete and f is sup-exact, then f is right-exact.

Similarly, a left-exact function $g : Y \rightarrow Y'$ is inf-exact. If ρ is left-complete and g is inf-exact, then g is left-exact.

Proof. Given subsets $A_1 \overset{R}{\subseteq} A_2$ of X , with suprema α_1 and α_2 , respectively, we observe that

$$[\alpha_1] = RA_1 \supseteq RA_2 = [\alpha_2].$$

If f is sup-exact, then

$$Rf_*A_1 = [f(\alpha_1)] \quad \text{and} \quad [f(\alpha_2)] = Rf_*A_2.$$

Since f is a morphism (394), cf. Exercise 163 one has

$$[f(\alpha_1)] \supseteq [f(\alpha_2)].$$

It follows that $f_*A_1 \overset{R}{\subseteq} f_*A_2$.

If ρ is right-complete, then the above argument applies to any pair A_1, A_2 of subsets of X .

The other case is proved similarly, or is reduced to the one already proven by passing to the opposite relations ρ^{op} and $(\rho')^{\text{op}}$. \square

6.11.4 Example: supremum as a right-exact function

Let $E \subseteq S$ be a subset of an ordered set (S, \leq) such that every subset $A \subseteq E$ has supremum in (S, \leq) . Recall that in an ordered set a supremum element is unique when it exists. Consider the corresponding morphism of ordered sets

$$\sup : (\mathcal{P}E, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (S, \leq), \quad A \longmapsto \sup A. \quad (396)$$

Lemma 6.8 Supremum morphism (396) is right-exact.

Proof. Recall that, for an order relation ρ on a set S , the associated preorder \succeq coincides with ρ^{op} . Any function $f : S \rightarrow S'$ between sets equipped with a binary relation is a morphism $(S, \rho) \rightarrow (S', \rho')$ if and only if it is a morphism for the opposite relations, $(S, \rho^{\text{op}}) \rightarrow (S', (\rho')^{\text{op}})$. In particular, for functions between ordered sets, we can replace condition stating that f in (394) is a morphism by the equivalent condition that $f : (S, \rho) \rightarrow (S', \rho')$ is a morphism.

We first prove that morphism (396) is **sup**-exact, then recall that $(\mathcal{P}E, \subseteq)$ is a complete lattice and, finally, invoke Proposition 6.7.

Let $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}E$ be a family of subsets of E . The following calculation⁴

$$R \mathbf{sup}_* \mathcal{A} = R \left(\bigcup_{A \in \mathcal{A}} \{\sup A\} \right) = \bigcap_{A \in \mathcal{A}} R \{\sup A\} = \bigcap_{A \in \mathcal{A}} [\sup A] = \bigcap_{A \in \mathcal{A}} RA = R \left(\bigcup \mathcal{A} \right) = [\sup \left(\bigcup \mathcal{A} \right)] \quad (397)$$

demonstrates that **sup**_{*} \mathcal{A} has supremum in (S, \preceq) and that

$$\sup \mathbf{sup}_* \mathcal{A} = \mathbf{sup} \left(\bigcup \mathcal{A} \right). \quad (398)$$

Thus, morphism (396) is **sup**-exact. \square

6.11.5 A basis of a complete lattice

When supremum morphism (396) is surjective, we say that subset $E \subseteq S$ is *sup-dense* in (S, \preceq) . Morphism (396) is an isomorphism precisely when every element $s \in S$ is the supremum of a unique subset of E . In this case we shall refer to E as a *basis* of complete lattice (S, \preceq) .

6.11.6 Description of right-exact morphisms from a complete lattice with a basis

If

$$f : (S, \preceq) \longrightarrow (S', \preceq') \quad (399)$$

is a right-exact morphism and φ is its restriction to E , then

$$f(s) = \sup \varphi_* A \quad \text{where } A \subseteq E \text{ is the unique subset such that } s = \sup A$$

which shows that the restriction function

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{OrdSet}}^{\text{rex}}((S, \preceq), (S', \preceq')) \longrightarrow \text{Func}(E, S'), \quad f \longmapsto f|_E, \quad (400)$$

from the set of right-exact morphisms $(S, \preceq) \rightarrow (S', \preceq')$ to the set of arbitrary functions $E \rightarrow S'$, is injective.

Any function $\varphi : E \rightarrow S'$ canonically induces a right-exact morphism

$$\tilde{\varphi} : (\mathcal{P}E, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (S', \preceq'), \quad \tilde{\varphi} := \sup \circ \varphi_*,$$

provided

$$\text{every member of family } \varphi_* \mathcal{P}E \text{ has supremum in } (S', \preceq'). \quad (401)$$

⁴For added clarity, when **sup** stands for the morphism between ordered sets, (396), I make it stand out in the above calculation by using the boldface font.

Then, by precomposing $\tilde{\varphi}$ with the inverse isomorphism

$$\mathbf{sup}^{-1} : (S, \leq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}E, \subseteq)$$

we obtain a right-exact morphism $f_{\varphi} : (S, \leq) \longrightarrow (S', \leq')$ whose restriction to E coincides with φ . It follows that (400) defines a bijective correspondence between right-exact morphisms (399) and functions $\varphi : E \rightarrow S'$ that satisfy Condition (401).

In particular, we establish the following lemma.

Lemma 6.9 *If $E \subseteq S$ is a basis of a complete lattice (S, \leq) , then restriction to E defines a canonical bijection between the set of right-exact morphisms from (S, \leq) to any right-complete ordered set (S', \leq') , and the set of arbitrary functions $E \rightarrow S'$.*

□

6.11.7 Right-exact morphisms $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq)$

As a corollary we obtain the following important result.

Theorem 6.10 *Every right exact morphism*

$$f : (\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq) \quad (402)$$

between the power-sets of arbitrary sets X and Y has the form of the canonical R -function associated with some binary relation $\rho : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$, cf. Section 6.4.1.

More precisely, correspondence

$$R \longleftarrow \rho$$

defines a canonical bijection

$$\text{Hom}_{\text{OrdSet}}^{\text{rex}}((\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq), (\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq)) \longleftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Equipotence classes of binary relations} \\ \rho : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements} \end{array} \right\}. \quad (403)$$

Proof. Every function

$$\varphi : X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}Y \quad (404)$$

has the form of the right-relatives function

$$[\] : X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}Y$$

for the binary relation

$$\rho_{\varphi} : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x, y \longmapsto " \varphi(x) \ni y ". \quad (405)$$

According to the proof of Lemma 6.9, for any function (404),

$$f := \sup_{(\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq)} \circ \varphi$$

is a right-exact morphism (402). Explicitly, for any $A \subseteq X$, one has

$$f(A) = \sup_{(\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq)} \varphi_* A = \bigcap_{x \in A} \varphi_*(x) = \bigcap_{x \in A} [x] = RA$$

where R is the canonical R -function associated with relation φ .

Moreover, according to Lemma 6.9, any right-exact morphism $f : (\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \supseteq)$ has this form for a unique function (404).

Finally, equipotence classes of binary relations $\varphi : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$ are in bijective correspondence with the associated right-relatives functions $[\] : X \rightarrow \mathcal{P}Y$. \square

6.11.8 Complete description of right- and left-exact morphisms between power-sets

By pre- or post-composing the canonical R -functions of binary relations $\varphi : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$,

$$\mathbb{C} \circ R, \quad R \circ \mathbb{C}, \quad \mathbb{C} \circ R \circ \mathbb{C},$$

with the complement antiinvolution \mathbb{C} that is both right- and left-exact, we obtain also complete description of right-exact morphisms between power-sets ordered by any combination of \subseteq and \supseteq relations. As a consequence, we also obtain a complete description of left-exact morphisms between power-sets.

We can make the corresponding descriptions even more explicit.

Corollary 6.11 *Every right exact morphism*

$$f : (\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq) \tag{406}$$

between the power-sets of arbitrary sets X and Y has the form

$$\varphi_* : A \longmapsto \bigcup_{x \in A} [x] \tag{407}$$

for some binary relation $\varphi : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$, and that relation is unique up to equipotence.

Exercise 164 *Show that*

$$\varphi_* = \mathbb{C} \circ R_{\neg} \tag{408}$$

where R_{\neg} is the R -function associated with the negated relation $\neg\varphi$.

Corollary 6.12 *Every left exact morphism*

$$g : (\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \tag{409}$$

between the power-sets of arbitrary sets X and Y has the form

$$*_\varphi : B \longmapsto \bigcup_{y \in B} \langle y \rangle \tag{410}$$

for some binary relation $\varphi : X, Y \longrightarrow \text{Statements}$, and that relation is unique up to equipotence.

6.11.9 Finitely exact functions

By analogy with our discussion of restricted notions of completeness of a binary relation, we can also consider similarly restricted notions of exactness of functions. Below we shall focus on the case of *finitely right*-, *left*-, *sup*-, and *inf*-, exact functions.

We begin from a pair of simple observations.

Exercise 165 Show that

$$\forall_{x_1, x_2 \in X} \quad x_1 \succeq x_2 \Leftrightarrow \sup\{x_1, x_2\} = x_1. \quad (411)$$

Lemma 6.13 A finitely sup-exact function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ is a morphism $(X, \succeq) \rightarrow (X', \succeq')$.

Proof. If f is finitely sup-exact, then

$$x_1 \succeq x_2 \Leftrightarrow \sup\{x_1, x_2\} = x_1 \Rightarrow i \sup f_*\{x_1, x_2\} = x_1 = \sup\{f(x_1), f(x_2)\} = x_1.$$

□

It follows that all four types of finitely exact functions are necessarily morphisms $(X, \succeq) \rightarrow (X', \succeq')$ or, respectively, $(Y, \preceq) \rightarrow (Y', \preceq')$.

6.11.10 Finitely biexact functions between power-sets

Note that a morphism $f : (\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq)$ is finitely right-exact if and only if

$$f(\emptyset) = \emptyset \quad \text{and} \quad \forall_{A_1, A_2 \subseteq X} \quad f(A_1 \cup A_2) = f(A_1) \cup f(A_2). \quad (412)$$

It is finitely left-exact if and only if

$$f(X) = Y \quad \text{and} \quad \forall_{A_1, A_2 \subseteq X} \quad f(A_1 \cap A_2) = f(A_1) \cap f(A_2). \quad (413)$$

For any subsets E and F of any set S the pair of conditions

$$E \cap F = \emptyset \quad \text{and} \quad E \cup F = S \quad (414)$$

is equivalent to the sigle condition

$$\complement E = F.$$

Lemma 6.14 A finitely biexact morphism $f : (\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq)$ is a homomorphism of algebraic unary structures

$$f : (\mathcal{P}X, \complement) \longrightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \complement),$$

i.e., $\complement \circ f = f \circ \complement$.

Exercise 166 Prove Lemma 6.14.

6.11.11 Complete description of exact morphisms between power-sets

We are ready to prove that every biexact function from $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ to $(\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq)$ coincides with the preimage morphism ϕ^* of a certain function $\phi : Y \rightarrow X$.

Theorem 6.15 *If $f : (\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq)$ is right-exact and finitely left-exact then it is left-exact. Any such function coincides with the preimage morphism*

$$f = \phi^* \quad (415)$$

for a unique function

$$\phi : Y \longrightarrow X.$$

Proof. The first assertion of the theorem is an immediate corollary of Lemma 6.14. By combining sup-exactness of f with its finite inf-exactness we obtain the following chain of equalities

$$Y = f(X) = f\left(\bigcup_{x \in X} \{x\}\right) = \bigcup_{x \in X} f(\{x\}).$$

Finite inf-exactness implies that sets $f(\{x\})$ are disjoint for different $x \in X$,

$$\forall_{x_1, x_2 \in X} x_1 \neq x_2 \Rightarrow f(\{x_1\}) \cap f(\{x_2\}) = \emptyset.$$

Thus, f coincides with the *fiber* function

$$X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}Y, \quad x \longmapsto \phi^* \{x\},$$

of the function

$$\phi : Y \longrightarrow X, \quad y \longmapsto \text{the unique } x \in X \text{ such that } f(\{x\}) \ni y.$$

□

6.12 The canonical tower of morphisms

6.12.1

Every binary relation defines a canonical morphism to the binary relation

$${}_L \subseteq : \mathcal{P}Y, \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad B, A \longmapsto "LB \subseteq A". \quad (416)$$

Exercise 167 *Show that the diagram*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}Y, \mathcal{P}X & & \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow & \searrow {}_L \subseteq & \\ [\] & & \text{Statements} \\ \uparrow \quad \uparrow & \nearrow \rho & \\ X, Y & & \end{array} \quad (417)$$

is \implies -commutative, i.e., $[\], \langle \] : (X, Y, \rho) \rightarrow (\mathcal{P}Y, \mathcal{P}X, {}_L \subseteq)$ is a morphism.

6.12.2

Diagram (417) admits completion to the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{P}Y, \mathcal{P}X & & \\
 \uparrow \uparrow & \searrow L \subseteq & \\
 \mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho) & & \\
 \uparrow \uparrow & \cdots \searrow & \\
 []_* X, \langle \rangle_* Y & \cdots \rightarrow & \text{Statements} \\
 \uparrow \uparrow & \nearrow \rho & \\
 X, Y & &
 \end{array}
 \quad (418)$$

The dotted arrows are the corresponding restrictions of relation $L \subseteq$. In particular, the middle and the top triangles in (418) strictly commute.

We shall refer to diagram (418) as the *canonical tower associated with a binary relation ρ* .

6.12.3

Consider the bottom triangle of the canonical tower :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 []_* X, \langle \rangle_* Y & & \\
 \uparrow \uparrow & \searrow L \subseteq & \\
 X, Y & & \text{Statements} \\
 \uparrow \uparrow & \nearrow \rho &
 \end{array}
 \quad (419)$$

Lemma 6.16 Let us denote by R' and L' the corresponding R - and, respectively, L -functions of the relation

$$L \subseteq : []_* Y, \langle \rangle_* X \longrightarrow \text{Statements} . \quad (420)$$

One has the following commutative diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{P}([]_* Y) & \xrightarrow{R'} & \mathcal{P}(\langle \rangle_* X) \\
 []_* \uparrow & \curvearrowright & \uparrow \langle \rangle_* \\
 \mathcal{P}X & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y
 \end{array}
 \quad \text{and} \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{P}([]_* Y) & \xleftarrow{L'} & \mathcal{P}(\langle \rangle_* X) \\
 []_* \uparrow & \curvearrowright & \uparrow \langle \rangle_* \\
 \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y
 \end{array}
 \quad (421)$$

Proof. In view of the definition of relation (420), one has, for $A \subseteq X$,

$$R'([]_* A) = \{ \langle y \rangle \in \langle \rangle_* Y \mid \forall_{x \in A} L[x] \subseteq \langle y \rangle \} .$$

In view of (354), one has

$$RA = \{ y \in Y \mid L[x] \subseteq \langle y \rangle \} .$$

Hence $\langle \rangle_* RA = R'([]_* A)$. The commutativity of the second square in (421) has a similar proof. \square

6.12.4 Biexact morphisms

We shall say that a morphism between binary relations $f, g : (X, Y, \rho) \rightarrow (X', Y', \rho')$ is *biexact* if f is right-exact and g is left-exact.

Corollary 6.17 *Canonical morphism (419) is biexact.*

Proof. Given subsets $A_1, A_2 \subseteq X$, one has the following sequence of equivalences and implications

$$A_1 \overset{R}{\subseteq} A_2 \Leftrightarrow RA_1 \supseteq RA_2 \Rightarrow R'([\]_* A_1) = [\]_* RA_1 \supseteq [\]_* RA_2 = R'([\]_* A_2) \Leftrightarrow [\]_* A_1 \overset{R'}{\subseteq} [\]_* A_2.$$

Right-exactness of $[\]$ follows. Left-exactness of $\langle \]$ is a corollary of the second commutative square in (421). \square

6.12.5 Right- and left-dense functions

Given binary relations ρ and ρ' as in Section 6.2.1, and an arbitrary function $f : X \rightarrow X'$, we shall say that f is *right-dense* if

$$R \circ L = R \circ f_* \circ f^* \circ L. \quad (422)$$

Similarly, given an arbitrary function $g : Y \rightarrow Y'$, we shall say that g is *left-dense* if

$$L \circ R = L \circ g_* \circ g^* \circ R. \quad (423)$$

Lemma 6.18 *Let $f, g : (X, Y, \rho) \rightarrow (X', Y', \rho')$ be a \Leftrightarrow -morphism between binary relations. If g is left-dense, then f is right-exact and vice-versa: if f is right-dense, then g is left-exact.*

Proof. Let $A_1, A_2 \subseteq X$. Lemma 6.3, in view of f, g being a \Leftrightarrow -morphism, yields the sequence of equivalences and implications

$$A_1 \overset{R}{\subseteq} A_2 \Leftrightarrow RA_1 \supseteq RA_2 \Leftrightarrow g^* R f_* A_1 \supseteq g^* R f_* A_2 \Rightarrow g_* g^* R f_* A_1 \supseteq g_* g^* R f_* A_2 \Rightarrow L g_* g^* R f_* A_1 \subseteq L g_* g^* R f_* A_2. \quad (424)$$

Left-density of g yields the sequence of equivalences

$$L g_* g^* R f_* A_1 \subseteq L g_* g^* R f_* A_2 \Leftrightarrow L R f_* A_1 \subseteq L R f_* A_2 \Leftrightarrow R f_* A_1 \supseteq R f_* A_2 \Leftrightarrow f_* A_1 \overset{R}{\subseteq} f_* A_2. \quad (425)$$

By combining (424) and (425), we deduce that f is right-exact. Left-exactness of g follows in a similar manner from the double hypothesis that f, g is a \Leftrightarrow -morphism and f is right-dense. \square

6.12.6 Bidense morphisms

We shall say that a morphism between binary relations $f, g : (X, Y, \rho) \rightarrow (X', Y', \rho')$ is *bidense* if f is right-dense and g is left-dense.

Corollary 6.19 *A bidense \Leftrightarrow -morphism between binary relations is biexact.*

\square

6.12.7

Consider the middle triangle of the canonical tower :

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho) & \\
 \uparrow & \uparrow & \searrow L \subseteq \\
 & \downarrow & \text{Statements} \\
 & \downarrow & \nearrow L \subseteq \\
 & [\]_* X, [\]_* Y &
 \end{array}
 \quad (426)$$

6.12.8 Calculations in $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho), L \subseteq)$

Let us denote by $[\]''$ and $\langle \]''$ the right-relatives function and, respectively, the left-relatives function of the relation

$$L \subseteq : \mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho) \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad (427)$$

and let us denote by R'' and by L'' the associated R - and L -functions between the power-sets of $\mathcal{R}(\rho)$ and $\mathcal{L}(\rho)$.

Lemma 6.20 *One has the following commutative diagrams*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{P}\mathcal{L} & \xrightarrow{L''} & \mathcal{P}\mathcal{R} \\
 \uparrow [\]'' & \text{ } & \uparrow \langle \]'' \\
 \mathcal{R} & \xrightarrow{L} & \mathcal{L}
 \end{array}
 \quad \text{and} \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{P}\mathcal{L} & \xleftarrow{R''} & \mathcal{P}\mathcal{R} \\
 \uparrow [\]'' & \text{ } & \uparrow \langle \]'' \\
 \mathcal{R} & \xleftarrow{R} & \mathcal{L}
 \end{array}
 \quad (428)$$

where $\mathcal{R} = \mathcal{R}(\rho)$ and $\mathcal{L} = \mathcal{L}(\rho)$.

Proof. Given families $\mathcal{E} \subseteq \mathcal{L}$ and $\mathcal{F} \subseteq \mathcal{R}$, one has

$$L''\mathcal{E} = \{F \in \mathcal{R} \mid \forall_{E \in \mathcal{E}} LF \subseteq E\} = \{F \in \mathcal{R} \mid LF \subseteq \bigcap \mathcal{E}\} = \langle \bigcap \mathcal{E} \rangle'' \quad (429)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 R''\mathcal{F} &= \{E \in \mathcal{E} \mid \forall_{F \in \mathcal{F}} LF \subseteq E\} = \{E \in \mathcal{E} \mid \forall_{F \in \mathcal{F}} F \supseteq RE\} \\
 &= \{E \in \mathcal{E} \mid \bigcap \mathcal{F} \supseteq RE\} = \{E \in \mathcal{E} \mid L \bigcap \mathcal{F} \subseteq E\} = [\bigcap \mathcal{F}]'' .
 \end{aligned}
 \quad (430)$$

This shows that relation $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho), L \subseteq)$ is complete which is not surprising in view of the fact that it is canonically isomorphic to the complete lattices $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{R}(\rho), \supseteq)$ and $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$.

Since

$$\bigcap \{E \in \mathcal{L} \mid LF \subseteq E\} = LF,$$

we obtain the identity

$$L''[F]'' = \langle \bigcap [F]'' \rangle'' = \langle LF \rangle'' \quad (431)$$

that is equivalent to the commutativity of the left square in (428).

Exercise 168 Prove commutativity of the right square is in (428).

Lemma 6.21 Canonical inclusion morphism (426) is bidense.

Proof. Let $g : \langle \rangle_* Y \hookrightarrow \mathcal{L}$ be the canonical inclusion. Given a family $\mathcal{E} \subseteq \mathcal{L}$, one has

$$g_* g^* \mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E} \cap \langle \rangle_* Y.$$

Given $F \in \mathcal{R}$, one has

$$[F]'' \cap \langle \rangle_* Y = \{\langle y \rangle \in \mathcal{L} \mid LF \subseteq \langle y \rangle\},$$

hence

$$\bigcap ([F]'' \cap \langle \rangle_* Y) = \bigcap \{\langle y \rangle \in \mathcal{L} \mid LF \subseteq \langle y \rangle\} = LF.$$

Combined with identities (429) and (431), this yields the identity

$$L'' ([F]'' \cap \langle \rangle_* Y) = \langle LF \rangle = L'' [F]''$$

and left-density of $g : \langle \rangle_* Y \hookrightarrow \mathcal{L}$ follows.

Exercise 169 Prove right-density of the canonical inclusion $f : [\]_* X \hookrightarrow \mathcal{R}$.

By combining Lemma 6.21 with Lemma 6.18, we obtain the following corollary.

Corollary 6.22 Canonical inclusion (426) is a bidense \Leftrightarrow -morphism, hence it is biexact.

□

6.13 Completion of a binary relation

6.13.1

The bottom and the middle morphisms in the canonical tower (432),

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho) & & \\
 \uparrow \uparrow & \searrow \iota \sqsubseteq & \\
 [\]_* X, \langle \rangle_* Y & \xrightarrow{\iota \sqsubseteq} & \text{Statements} \\
 \uparrow \uparrow & \nearrow \rho & \\
 [\] \uparrow \uparrow \langle \rangle & & \\
 X, Y & &
 \end{array} \quad (432)$$

are bidense and biexact. Composition preserves left- and right-density as well as left- and right-exactness, hence also their composite is both bidense and biexact.

6.13.2

The source of the composite morphism is the original binary relation ρ , the target is a complete relation that is canonically isomorphic to complete lattices $(\mathcal{R}(\rho), \mathcal{R}(\rho), \supseteq)$ and $(\mathcal{L}(\rho), \mathcal{L}(\rho), \subseteq)$.

6.13.3

In Theory of Ordered Sets those two lattices provide standard models for the biexact embedding of an arbitrary ordered set onto a bidense subset of a complete lattice.

6.13.4 The extended real line $(\bar{\mathbf{R}}, \leq)$

When applied to the standard linear order on the set of rational numbers (\mathbf{Q}, \leq) , we obtain a model for the *extended real line* $(\bar{\mathbf{R}}, \leq)$ where $\bar{\mathbf{R}}$ is the union of three disjoint sets

$$\bar{\mathbf{R}} = \{-\infty\} \cup \mathbf{R} \cup \{\infty\}. \quad (433)$$

If one uses complete lattice $(\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{Q}, \leq), \subseteq)$ as the model for the completion, then

- (i) Real numbers $r \in \mathbf{R}$ correspond to the sets of lower bounds of nonempty bounded below subsets of (\mathbf{Q}, \leq) . In other words, (\mathbf{R}, \leq) coincides with the ordered subset $(L_* \mathcal{P}_{\triangleright} \mathbf{Q}, \subseteq)$ of $(\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{Q}, \leq), \subseteq)$, cf. Section 6.8.4.
- (ii) Extended real number $-\infty$ corresponds to \emptyset viewed as the set of lower bounds of *not* bounded below subsets of \mathbf{Q} (such subsets of \mathbf{Q} are automatically not empty).
- (iii) Extended real number ∞ corresponds to \mathbf{Q} viewed as the set of lower bounds of the *empty* subset of (\mathbf{Q}, \leq) .

Exercise 170 Make a similar description of \mathbf{R} , $-\infty$, and ∞ , if one uses complete lattice $(\mathcal{R}(\mathbf{Q}, \leq), \subseteq)$ instead.

You can take either of the above two descriptions as *the* definition of $-\infty$, \mathbf{R} and ∞ . It is wiser, however, to define *an* extended real line as *any* completion of ordered set (\mathbf{Q}, \leq) , and then to define $-\infty$ and ∞ as the smallest and, respectively, the greatest elements, and to define points of *a* real line to be the remaining elements.

6.14 Bimorphisms between binary relations

6.14.1

A binary relation provides an example of a mathematical structure where apart from the obvious definition of a morphism, there is yet another natural if less obvious definition.

6.14.2

We shall say that a pair of functions

$$f : X \rightarrow X' \quad \text{and} \quad Y \leftarrow Y' : g \quad (434)$$

is a *\sim -bimorphism from ρ to ρ'* if

$$(f, \text{id}_Y) \cdot \rho' \sim (\text{id}_X, g) \cdot \rho \quad (435)$$

where \sim is one of the three relations \Rightarrow , \Leftarrow , or \Leftrightarrow .

This triple definition of a bimorphism can be expressed by means of the corresponding diagrams

$$(\Rightarrow\text{-bimorphism}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X', Y' & & \\ \uparrow f \parallel & \searrow \rho' & \\ X, Y' & & \text{Statements} \\ \parallel \downarrow g & \nearrow \rho & \\ X, Y & & \end{array} \quad (436)$$

$$(\Leftarrow\text{-bimorphism}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X', Y' & & \\ \uparrow f \parallel & \searrow \rho' & \\ X, Y' & & \text{Statements} \\ \parallel \downarrow g & \nearrow \rho & \\ X, Y & & \end{array} \quad (437)$$

$$(\Leftrightarrow\text{-bimorphism}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} X', Y' & & \\ \uparrow f \parallel & \searrow \rho' & \\ X, Y' & & \text{Statements} \\ \parallel \downarrow g & \nearrow \rho & \\ X, Y & & \end{array} \quad (438)$$

Exercise 171 Suppose f, g is a \sim -bimorphism from ρ to ρ' and f', g' is a \sim -bimorphism from ρ' to ρ'' . Show that $f' \circ f, g' \circ g$ is a \sim -bimorphism from ρ to ρ'' .

Lemma 6.23 The following conditions are equivalent :

- (a) A pair of functions (434) is a \Rightarrow -bimorphism.
- (b) $\forall_{y' \in Y'} f^* \langle y' \rangle \subseteq \langle g(y') \rangle$.
- (c) $\forall_{x \in X} \langle f(x) \rangle \subseteq g^* [x]$.

6.14.3

Condition (b) of Lemma 6.23 says that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{\langle \cdot \rangle} & Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & \searrow \subseteq & \downarrow g \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{\langle \cdot \rangle} & Y \end{array} \quad (439)$$

is \subseteq -commutative, while Condition (c) says that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f \uparrow & \searrow \textcolor{red}{\curvearrowright} & \uparrow g^* \\ X & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (440)$$

is \supseteq -commutative.

Proof of Lemma 6.23. For every $x \in X$ and $y' \in Y'$, one has the following two sequences of equivalent statements

$$[f(x)] \ni y' \iff \rho'(f(x), y') \iff f(x) \in \langle y' \rangle \iff x \in f^*\langle y' \rangle$$

and

$$g^*[x] \ni y' \iff [x] \ni g(y') \iff \rho(x, g(y')) \iff x \in \langle g(y') \rangle.$$

If any of the statements of the top sequence implies any of the statements in the bottom sequence, then any other statement of the top sequence implies any statement of the bottom one.

The first statement in the formulation of Lemma 6.23 says that

$$\forall_{x \in X} \left(\forall_{y' \in Y'} \rho'(f(x), y') \right) \Rightarrow \rho(x, g(y'))$$

which is equivalent to the statement

$$\forall_{y' \in Y'} \left(\forall_{x \in X} \rho'(f(x), y') \right) \Rightarrow \rho(x, g(y')).$$

Condition (b) of Lemma 6.23 is equivalent to the statement

$$\forall_{x \in X} \left(\forall_{y' \in Y'} [f(x)] \ni y' \right) \Rightarrow g^*[x] \ni y'.$$

Finally, Condition (c) of Lemma 6.23 is equivalent to the statement

$$\forall_{y' \in Y'} \left(\forall_{x \in X} x \in f^*\langle y' \rangle \right) \Rightarrow x \in \langle g(y') \rangle.$$

Thus, each of the conditions in Lemma 6.23 implies the remaining two. \square

6.14.4

Note that the proof uses the fact that interchanging the order in which universal quantification is applied produces equivalent statements. The same holds for existential quantification of relations. This is an analogue of Fubini's Theorem stating that (under a mild integrability hypothesis) interchanging the order of integration in evaluation of an iterated double integral produces the same result.

Beware that interchanging the order in which universal and existential quantification are applied produces statements that are rarely equivalent.

Exercise 172 Show that if f, g is a \sim -bimorphism from ρ to ρ' , then g, f is a \sim -bimorphism from $(\rho')^{\text{op}}$ to ρ^{op} .

Later we shall see that this means that the category of binary relations and bimorphisms is equipped with a canonical $*$ -category structure, i.e., it is a category with a canonical *anti-involution*. The exact meaning of these terms will be explained later. Here it is sufficient to say that $*$ -structures play a fundamental role in Mathematics and, especially, in Mathematical Physics.

Corollary 6.24 *The following conditions are equivalent :*

(a) *A pair of functions (434) is a \Rightarrow -bimorphism.*

(b') $\forall_{B' \subseteq Y'} f^* L B' \subseteq L(g_* B').$

(c') $\forall_{A \subseteq X} R(f_* A) \subseteq g^* R A.$

Proof. Condition (b) of Lemma 6.23 implies that

$$\forall_{y' \in B'} f^* \langle y' \rangle \subseteq \langle g(y') \rangle$$

which, in turn, implies that

$$\bigcap_{y' \in B'} f^* \langle y' \rangle \subseteq \bigcap_{y' \in B'} \langle g(y') \rangle. \quad (441)$$

The left-hand-side of (441) equals, in view of identity (138),

$$f^* \left(\bigcap_{y' \in B'} \langle y' \rangle \right)$$

while the right-hand-side equals

$$\bigcap_{x \in g_* B'} \langle x \rangle = L(g_* B').$$

This demonstrates that statement (b) implies statement (b').

Exercise 173 *Write down two proofs of the equivalence*

$$\text{statement (c)} \iff \text{statement (c')},$$

an explicit proof and a proof that deduces this from the already proven equivalence of statements (b) and (b').

The reverse implications (b') \implies (b) and (c') \implies (c) hold because

$$g_* \{y'\} = \{g(y')\}, \quad f_* \{x\} = \{f(x)\}, \quad L\{y\} = \langle y \rangle, \quad \text{and} \quad R\{x\} = [x],$$

hence statement (b) is a *special case* of statement (b') and statement (c) is a *special case* of statement (c'), cf. Section 1.8.4. \square

6.14.5

Condition (b') of Corollary 6.24 says that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & \searrow \textcolor{red}{\subseteq} & \downarrow g_* \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{L} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (442)$$

is \subseteq -commutative, while Condition (c') says that the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f_* \uparrow & \nearrow \textcolor{red}{\supseteq} & \uparrow g^* \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xrightarrow{R} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (443)$$

is \supseteq -commutative.

Exercise 174 State for \Leftarrow -bimorphisms the analog of Lemma 6.23 and draw the analogs of diagrams (439) and (440).

Exercise 175 State for \Leftarrow -bimorphisms the analog of Corollary 6.24 and draw the analogs of diagrams (442) and (443).

6.14.6

We can compose bimorphisms of either type but the result is going to be a \Rightarrow -bimorphism or a \Leftarrow -bimorphism, if the bimorphisms we compose are both \Rightarrow - or \Leftarrow -bimorphisms.

6.15 Galois connections

6.15.1

The following characterization of \Leftrightarrow -bimorphisms is an immediate corollary of Lemma 6.23.

Corollary 6.25 *The following conditions are equivalent:*

- (a) *A pair of functions (434) is a \Leftrightarrow -bimorphism.*
- (b) $\forall_{y' \in Y'} f^*[y'] = [g(y')].$
- (c) $\forall_{x \in X} [f(x)] = g^*[x].$

6.15.2

Condition (b) in Corollary 6.25 says that the square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \xleftarrow{[\]} & Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & \curvearrowright & \downarrow g \\ \mathcal{P}X & \xleftarrow{[\]} & Y, \end{array} \quad (444)$$

is commutative, while Condition (c) says that the square diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X' & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y' \\ f \uparrow & \curvearrowleft & \uparrow g^* \\ X & \xrightarrow{[\]} & \mathcal{P}Y \end{array} \quad (445)$$

is commutative.

Exercise 176 State the analogue of Corollary 6.24 for \Leftrightarrow -bimorphisms and represent two out of three conditions as commutativity of appropriate diagrams.

Exercise 177 Show that, if f, g is a \Leftrightarrow -bimorphism, then f is a morphism $(X, \succeq) \rightarrow (X', \succeq)$ of preordered sets and, likewise, g is a morphism of preordered sets $(Y', \preceq) \rightarrow (Y, \preceq)$. Here \succeq and \preceq are the corresponding canonical preorders associated with the binary relations ρ and ρ' , cf. Section 6.3.9.

6.15.3 Galois connections

A *Galois connection* is a traditional term for a \Leftrightarrow -bimorphism between ordered sets, i.e., when $X = Y$, $X' = Y'$, while ρ and ρ' are order relations. From now on, we shall adopt this term to arbitrary \Leftrightarrow -bimorphisms between arbitrary binary relations.

Exercise 178 Let (X, \leq) be an ordered set and

$$\mathcal{P}_{\sup} X := \{A \subseteq X \mid \sup A \text{ exists}\}$$

be the set of those subsets of X that have supremum. Show that the pair of functions

$$\begin{array}{ccc} (X, \leq) & & \\ \sup \uparrow & \downarrow [\] & \\ (\mathcal{P}_{\sup} X, \subseteq) & & \end{array} \quad (446)$$

forms a Galois connection.

Exercise 179 State the analogous assertion for the infimum function.⁵

⁵Hint: if you do this mindlessly, you are likely to state it incorrectly and you will receive no credit.

6.15.4 Equipotence classes of binary relations represented as Galois connections

The proof of Theorem 6.1 provides a complete description of all Galois connections from the membership relation on a set X that we will denote \in_X , to the opposite membership relation on a set Y that we will denote \ni_Y .

Theorem 6.26 *Every Galois connection from \in_X to \ni_Y has the form*

$$[\]_{\rho}, \rho[\]$$

for some binary relation $\rho : X, Y \rightarrow \text{Statements}$. In particular, there is a canonical bijective correspondence

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Galois connections} \\ \text{from } \in_X \text{ to } \ni_Y \end{array} \right\} \longleftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Equipotence classes of binary relations} \\ \rho : X, Y \rightarrow \text{Statements} \end{array} \right\}. \quad (447)$$

6.16 Left and right adjoints: existence and exactness properties

6.16.1 Terminology

When f, g forms a \Leftrightarrow -connection, we say that f is a *left adjoint* of g and that g is a *right adjoint* of f .

6.16.2 Uniqueness up to an equivalence

If f_1 and f_2 are left adjoints of g , then

$$\forall_{x \in X} [f_1(x)] = g^*[x] = [f_2(x)],$$

i.e., f_1 is \simeq -equivalent to f_2 .

Vice-versa, if f_2 is a left adjoint of g and f_1 is \simeq -equivalent to f_2 , then also f_1 is a left adjoint of g .

Similarly for right adjoints of any function $f : X \rightarrow X'$: any two right adjoints $Y' \rightarrow Y$ of f are \simeq -equivalent and any function $Y' \rightarrow Y$ \simeq -equivalent to a right adjoint of f is a right adjoint of f .

6.16.3 Existence of left and right adjoints

It remains to characterize functions $f : X \rightarrow X'$ that admit a right adjoint, and functions $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$ that admit a left adjoint.

For a given function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ and binary relations ρ and ρ' , let us consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \longleftarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho') & \longleftarrow & \langle \]_*Y' \llcorner \] \rangle Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & & & & \\ \mathcal{P}X & \longleftarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho) & \longleftarrow & \langle \]_*Y \llcorner \] \rangle Y \end{array} \quad (448)$$

The canonical inclusions are marked by hooked arrows, the canonical surjections—by two arrowheads.

Lemma 1.6 guarantees that the following three conditions are equivalent:

(i) One has

$$f^* \langle \downarrow_* Y' \subseteq \langle \downarrow_* Y,$$

i.e., diagram (448) can be completed to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \longleftrightarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho') & \longleftrightarrow & \langle \downarrow_* Y' & \xleftarrow{\langle 1} & Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & & & & \textcolor{red}{f^*} \downarrow & & \\ \mathcal{P}X & \longleftrightarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho) & \longleftrightarrow & \langle \downarrow_* Y & \xleftarrow{\langle 1} & Y \end{array} . \quad (449)$$

(ii) Diagram (448) can be completed to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \longleftrightarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho') & \longleftrightarrow & \langle \downarrow_* Y' & \xleftarrow{\langle 1} & Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & & & & \textcolor{red}{f^*} \downarrow & & \textcolor{red}{g} \downarrow \\ \mathcal{P}X & \longleftrightarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho) & \longleftrightarrow & \langle \downarrow_* Y & \xleftarrow{\langle 1} & Y \end{array} \quad (450)$$

for some function $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$.

(iii) Diagram (448) can be completed to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} \mathcal{P}X' & \longleftrightarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho') & \longleftrightarrow & \langle \downarrow_* Y' & \xleftarrow{\langle 1} & Y' \\ f^* \downarrow & & & & & & \textcolor{red}{g} \downarrow \\ \mathcal{P}X & \longleftrightarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho) & \longleftrightarrow & \langle \downarrow_* Y & \xleftarrow{\langle 1} & Y \end{array} \quad (451)$$

for some function $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$.

6.16.4

Condition (i) means that f is a morphism of structures of “topological type”,

$$(X, \mathcal{A}) \longrightarrow (X', \mathcal{A}'),$$

where $\mathcal{A} = \langle \downarrow_* Y$ and $\mathcal{A}' = \langle \downarrow_* Y'$.

6.16.5

Condition (iii) means that g is a right adjoint of f .

6.16.6

Given a subset $B' \subseteq Y'$, one has

$$f^*LB' = f^*\left(\bigcap_{y' \in B'} \{\langle y \mid y \in B'\}\right) = \bigcap_{y' \in B'} f^*[y'] \quad (452)$$

and the right-hand-side of (452) belongs to $\mathcal{L}(\rho)$ if Condition (i) holds. In particular, each of the previous three conditions is equivalent to the condition :

(iv) Diagram (448) can be completed to a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \mathcal{P}X' & \longleftarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho') & \longleftarrow & \langle \downarrow_* Y' & \xleftarrow{\langle 1 \rangle} & Y' \\
 f^* \downarrow & & f^* \downarrow & & f^* \downarrow & & \downarrow g \\
 \mathcal{P}X & \longleftarrow & \mathcal{L}(\rho) & \longleftarrow & \langle \downarrow_* Y & \xleftarrow{\langle 1 \rangle} & Y
 \end{array} \tag{453}$$

for some function $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$.

This concludes characterization of functions $f : X \rightarrow X'$ that admit a right adjoint. There is an analogous characterization of functions $g : Y' \rightarrow Y$ that admit a left adjoint.

Corollary 6.27 *If f, g is a \Leftrightarrow -connection, then f is right-exact and g is left-exact.*

In other words, if f admits a right adjoint, then f is right-exact. Similarly, if g admits a left adjoint, then g is left-exact.

Proof. Let A_1 and A_2 be subsets of X such that $RA_1 \supseteq RA_2$. Then,

$$Rf_*A_1 = g^*RA_1 \supseteq g^*RA_2 = Rf_*A_2.$$

Similarly, if B_1 and B_2 are subsets of Y such that $LB_1 \supseteq LB_2$, then

$$Lg_*B_1 = f^*LB_1 \supseteq f^*LB_2 = Lg_*B_2.$$

□

Note that Corollary 6.27 is a stronger version of the assertion of Exercise 177.

Corollary 6.28 *When $X = Y$ and $X' = Y'$, and $f : X \rightarrow X'$ admits both a right adjoint and a left adjoint, then f is exact, cf. Section 6.11.2.* □

Note that the right and the left adjoint of f , are, generally, not equal to each other.

6.16.7 Example: f^* and its two adjoints f_* and $f_!$

A fundamentally important example of this happening is provided by the direct image, inverse image, and conjugate image, associated with a function $f : X \rightarrow Y$, and operating between power-sets $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ and $(\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq)$, cf. (134). Of this trio, f_* is right-exact but, generally, not left-exact, $f_!$ is left-exact but, generally, not right-exact, whereas f^* is both left- and right-exact. And indeed,

$$f^* \text{ has both a left and a right adjoints, namely } f_* \text{ and } f_!. \tag{454}$$

According to Theorem 6.15 the preimage morphisms are the *only* exact functions from $(\mathcal{P}Y, \subseteq)$ to $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$.

6.16.8

A particularly interesting phenomenon, known in Category Theory as *equivalence of categories*, occurs when a function f admits a left adjoint g that is simultaneously a right adjoint of f . This concept has been a cornerstone of Mathematics for the last sixty years.

6.16.9 Example: Relations versus correspondences

Let X' be the set of n -ary relations $\text{Rel}(S_1, \dots, S_n)$ between elements of sets S_1, \dots, S_n , preordered by implication \implies . Let X be the power-set of the Cartesian product $S_1 \times \dots \times S_n$, ordered by inclusion \subseteq . The function $X \rightarrow X'$ introduced in Section 1.12.24, that assigns in a canonical manner to a correspondence $C \subseteq S_1 \times \dots \times S_n$, a relation $\rho_C \in \text{Rel}(S_1, \dots, S_n)$, is both a left and a right adjoint of the graph function $\Gamma : X' \rightarrow X$, cf. Section 1.12.17.

7 Topology

7.1 Binary relations between elements and subsets of a given set

7.1.1

The only primitive relation of Mathematics, membership relation, cf. Section 6.3.1, tells us which elements of a set X belong to which subsets $A \subseteq X$ and nothing else. It is an important example of a binary relation between elements and subsets of a given set, for this reason we shall denote an arbitrary relation of this kind by a Greek minuscule letter *epsilon*,

$$\varepsilon : X, \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \text{Statements}, \quad x, A \longmapsto "x \varepsilon A" . \quad (455)$$

We shall refer to relations (455) as ε -relations.

7.1.2 The conjugate ε -relation

The set $\text{Rel}(X, \mathcal{P}X)$ of ε -relations on X is equipped with distinguished elements \in and \notin , and with two unary operations $\mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}X$,

$$\neg_\bullet : \varepsilon \longmapsto \neg \circ \varepsilon \quad \text{and} \quad (\text{id}_X, \mathbb{C})^\bullet : \varepsilon \longmapsto \varepsilon \circ (\text{id}_X, \mathbb{C}), \quad (456)$$

and their composition $\neg_\bullet \circ \mathbb{C}^\bullet$ is the operation

$$\varepsilon \longmapsto \varepsilon^c := \neg \circ \varepsilon \circ . \quad (457)$$

We shall refer to (457) as the *conjugation* operation and to ε^c as the *conjugate* of ε .

7.1.3

Conjugation is an involution of $\text{Rel}(X, \mathcal{P}X)$ up to equipotence, i.e., the its square is equipotent to the identity operation on $\text{Rel}(X, \mathcal{P}X)$,

$$\forall_{\varepsilon \in \text{Rel}(X, \mathcal{P}X)} \varepsilon^{cc} \iff \varepsilon .$$

7.1.4 Unary operations on the power-set

The left-relatives function of an ε -relation is a unary operation $\langle \rangle : \mathcal{P}X \rightarrow \mathcal{P}X$ and the surjective function

$$\text{Rel}(X, \mathcal{P}X) \longrightarrow \text{Op}_1 \mathcal{P}X, \quad \varepsilon \longmapsto {}_\varepsilon \langle \rangle \quad (458)$$

induces a canonical bijective correspondence

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{equipotence classes of relations} \\ \varepsilon : X, \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \text{Statements} \end{array} \right\} \longleftrightarrow \text{Op}_1 \mathcal{P}X . \quad (459)$$

7.1.5

The set $\text{Op}_1 \mathcal{P}X$ of unary operations on $\mathcal{P}X$ is equipped with distinguished elements $\text{id}_{\mathcal{P}X}$ and \mathbb{C} , and with two unary operations $\text{Op}_1 \mathcal{P}X \rightarrow \text{Op}_1 \mathcal{P}X$,

$$\mathbb{C}_* : \lambda \mapsto \mathbb{C} \circ \lambda \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbb{C}^* : \lambda \mapsto \lambda \circ \mathbb{C}. \quad (460)$$

Exercise 180 Show that function (458) is a homomorphism

$$(\text{Rel}(X, \mathcal{P}X); \in, \notin, \neg, (\text{id}_X, \mathbb{C})^*) \rightarrow (\text{Op}_1 \mathcal{P}X; \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}X}, \mathbb{C}, \mathbb{C}_*, \mathbb{C}^*). \quad (461)$$

In particular, one has

$$\varepsilon^c \langle \rangle = \mathbb{C} \circ \langle \rangle \circ \mathbb{C}. \quad (462)$$

7.1.6 Properties of the $\varepsilon \langle \rangle$ -operation transferred to relation ε

As an operation on a set equipped with an order relation, operation $\varepsilon \langle \rangle$ may have numerous properties. It may be an endomorphism of the ordered set $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$, it may be idempotent, it may be left- or right-exact, it may be finitely left- or right-exact, etc. In each case we shall transfer the corresponding property to the relation itself and say, for example, that (455) is *monotonic*, *idempotent*, *left- or right-exact*, *finitely left- or right-exact*, etc.

Exercise 181 Show that ε is monotonic if and only if ε^c is monotonic.

7.1.7 ε -invariant and ε -coinvariant families

Recall, that given a unary operation on any set S , there are two distinguished families of subsets $E \subseteq S$, *invariant* and *coinvariant* ones, cf. Sections 2.4.10 and 2.4.11. As usual, when $S = \mathcal{P}X$, we shall refer to such subsets as *families of subsets*.

We shall say that a family $\mathcal{E} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ of subsets of X is

$(\mathcal{P}X^{\varepsilon})$ *ε -invariant* if \mathcal{E} is invariant under operation $\varepsilon \langle \rangle$, and we shall denote the set of such families by $\mathcal{P}X^{\varepsilon}$;

$(\mathcal{P}X_{\varepsilon})$ *ε -coinvariant* if \mathcal{E} is coinvariant under operation $\varepsilon \langle \rangle$, and we shall denote the set of such families by $\mathcal{P}X_{\varepsilon}$.

Exercise 182 Show that \mathcal{E} is ε -invariant if and only if the family of the complements $\mathbb{C}_* \mathcal{E}$ is ε^c -invariant.

7.1.8

7.1.9 X -indexed families $(\mathcal{E}_x)_{x \in X}$ of families of subsets of X .

The right-relatives function of a relation ε is a family of families of subsets of X and the assignment

$$\varepsilon \mapsto [\]_{\varepsilon}$$

induces a canonical bijective correspondence

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{equipotence classes of relations} \\ \varepsilon : X, \mathcal{P}X \longrightarrow \text{Statements} \end{array} \right\} \longleftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} X\text{-indexed families } (\mathcal{E}_x)_{x \in X} \\ \text{of families of subsets of } X \end{array} \right\}. \quad (463)$$

The equipotence class of membership relation \in corresponds to the family of *principal ultrafilters*

$$X \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}\mathcal{P}X, \quad x \longmapsto \mathcal{P}_x X, \quad (464)$$

cf. Section 6.7.3.

7.1.10 Invariant and coinvariant ε -relations

We shall say that relation (455) is

- (a) *invariant* if each family $[x]$ is ε -invariant;
- (b) *coinvariant* if each family $[x]$ is ε -coinvariant.

Lemma 7.1 (a) *A relation ε is invariant if and only if $\langle \] \circ \langle \] \subseteq \langle \]$.*

(b) *A relation ε is coinvariant if and only if $\langle \] \circ \langle \] \supseteq \langle \]$.*

Note. The target of $\langle \]$ is the power-set ordered by relation \subseteq . Accordingly, sets of $\mathcal{P}X$ -valued functions are ordered by the induced relation, denoted by the same symbol.

Proof. \Leftrightarrow -connection $\langle \]_*, \langle \]^*$ yields, for any $x \in X$, equivalence of statements

$$\langle \]_*[x] \subseteq [x] \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad [x] \subseteq \langle \]^*[x]. \quad (465)$$

One has

$$[x] = \{A \subseteq X \mid x \in \langle A \rangle\} \quad \text{and} \quad \langle \]^*[x] = \{A \subseteq X \mid \langle A \rangle \in [x]\} = \{A \subseteq X \mid x \in \langle \langle A \rangle \rangle\}.$$

The right-hand-side of (465) is, therefore, equivalent to

$$\forall_{A \subseteq X} x \in \langle A \rangle \Rightarrow x \in \langle \langle A \rangle \rangle. \quad (466)$$

By quantifying over $x \in X$ each statement in (465) and (466), we obtain equivalence of invariance of relation ε with the statement

$$\forall_{A \subseteq X} \langle A \rangle \subseteq \langle \langle A \rangle \rangle.$$

The latter means that $\langle \] \subseteq \langle \] \circ \langle \]$.

Exercise 183 *Prove Part (b).*

Hint. Utilize Galois connection $\langle \]^*, \langle \]_!$.

Exercise 184 *Show that*

$$\varepsilon \langle \] \circ \varepsilon \langle \] \subseteq \varepsilon \langle \] \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \varepsilon^c \langle \] \circ \varepsilon^c \langle \] \supseteq \varepsilon^c \langle \].$$

7.1.11 Idempotent relations

Recall that relation (455) is said to be *idempotent* if the associated operation $\langle \]$ is idempotent, i.e.,

$$\langle \] \circ \langle \] = \langle \] .$$

Corollary 7.2 *A relation ε is idempotent in either of the following two cases*

- (a) ε is invariant and $\varepsilon \implies \epsilon$.
- (b) ε is coinvariant and $\epsilon \implies \varepsilon$.

Proof. A relation ε being weaker than membership relation ϵ is equivalent to

$$\varepsilon \langle \] \subseteq \epsilon \langle \] . \quad (467)$$

Noting that $\epsilon \langle \] = \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}X}$, by composing both sides of (467) with $\varepsilon \langle \]$, we obtain

$$\varepsilon \langle \] \circ \varepsilon \langle \] \subseteq \varepsilon \langle \] .$$

The reverse containment is, in view of Lemma 7.1, equivalent to ε being invariant.

Exercise 185 *Prove Part (b).*

□

Exercise 186 *Show that*

$$\varepsilon \implies \epsilon \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \epsilon \implies \varepsilon^\epsilon .$$

Corollary 7.3 (a) *If a relation ε is idempotent, monotonic and weaker than ϵ , then the family*

$$\mathcal{E} := \langle \]_* \mathcal{P}X \quad (468)$$

is a sup-closed subset of $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ and

$$\forall_{A \subseteq X} \langle A \rangle = \max\{E \in \mathcal{E} \mid E \subseteq A\} . \quad (469)$$

(b) *If ε is idempotent, monotonic and stronger than ϵ , then family (468) is an inf-closed subset of $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ and*

$$\forall_{A \subseteq X} \langle A \rangle = \min\{E \in \mathcal{E} \mid E \supseteq A\} . \quad (470)$$

Proof. Let $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ be a family of subsets of X . One has

$$\forall_{A \in \mathcal{A}} \langle A \rangle \subseteq \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{A}} \langle B \rangle .$$

This implies, if ε is monotonic, that

$$\forall_{A \in \mathcal{A}} \langle \langle A \rangle \rangle \subseteq \left\langle \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{A}} \langle B \rangle \right\rangle . \quad (471)$$

If ε is idempotent, then (471) becomes

$$\forall_{A \in \mathcal{A}} \langle A \rangle \subseteq \left\langle \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{A}} B \right\rangle$$

which is equivalent to

$$\bigcup_{A \in \mathcal{A}} \langle A \rangle \subseteq \left\langle \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{A}} B \right\rangle.$$

If ε is weaker than ϵ , then

$$\left\langle \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{A}} B \right\rangle \subseteq \bigcup_{A \in \mathcal{A}} \langle A \rangle.$$

This proves that the supremum of family $\langle \rangle_* \mathcal{A}$ in $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ is a member of \mathcal{E} .

Moreover, given an arbitrary subset $A \subseteq X$ and a member $E \in \mathcal{E}$, contained in A , one has

$$E = \langle \langle E \rangle \rangle \subseteq \langle A \rangle \subseteq A,$$

and this means that the family

$$\{E \in \mathcal{E} \mid E \subseteq A\}$$

has the greatest element, namely $\langle A \rangle$.

Exercise 187 Prove Part (b).

□

Exercise 188 Show that

$$\varepsilon \langle \rangle_* \mathcal{P}X = \mathcal{C}_* (\varepsilon \langle \rangle_* \mathcal{P}X). \quad (472)$$

In other words, the family $\langle \rangle_* \mathcal{P}X$ for the *conjugate* of ε consists of the *complements* of members of the family $\langle \rangle_* \mathcal{P}X$ for ε .

7.1.12 Interior relations

A relation (455) is said to be an *interior* relation if it is

- (a) weaker than ϵ , i.e., $\varepsilon \implies \epsilon$,
- (b) *invariant*,
- (c) finitely left-axact.

7.1.13 Adherence relations

A relation (455) is said to be an *adherence* relation if it is

- (a) stronger than ϵ , i.e., $\epsilon \implies \varepsilon$,
- (b) *coinvariant*,
- (c) finitely right-axact.

Exercise 189 Show that ε is an interior relation if and only if ε^ϵ is an adherence relation.

7.1.14

Both for interior and for adherence relations, operation $\varepsilon \langle \]$ is a *retraction* of $\mathcal{P}X$ onto \mathcal{E} , cf. (468).

7.1.15

Finite left-exactness, as well as finite right-exactness, of a function between ordered sets—either one of these conditions implies that the function is a morphism of ordered sets. Then, according to Corollary 7.3, family \mathcal{E} is sup-closed if ε is an interior relation, and it is inf-closed if ε is an adherence relation.

7.1.16 Open subsets

If operation $\langle \]$ is finitely left-exact, then \mathcal{E} is finitely inf-closed and we conclude that, for every interior relation on X , family \mathcal{E} is

$$\text{sup-closed, and finitely inf-closed.} \quad (473)$$

In this case, we shall refer to members of family \mathcal{E} as *open subsets*.

7.1.17 Topologies on a set X

A family of subsets of a set X satisfying double Condition (473) is called a *topology* on X . We shall signal that a family is a topology by employing generic notation \mathcal{T} .

7.1.18 Closed subsets

If $\langle \]$ is finitely right-exact, then \mathcal{E} is finitely sup-closed and we conclude that, for every adherence relation on X , family \mathcal{E} is

$$\text{finitely sup-closed, and inf-closed.} \quad (474)$$

In this case, we shall refer to members of family \mathcal{E} as *closed subsets*. We shall also signal that a family satisfies double Condition (474) by adopting generic notation \mathcal{X} for such families.

7.1.19 Closed versus open subsets

Since the complement operation \mathbb{C} is an isomorphism of $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ with $(\mathcal{P}X, \supseteq)$, we note that

$$\forall_{\mathcal{E} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{family } \mathcal{E} \\ \text{is a topology} \end{array} \Leftrightarrow \begin{array}{l} \text{family of the complements } \mathbb{C}_* \mathcal{E} \\ \text{satisfies Condition (474).} \end{array} \quad (475)$$

7.2 Topologizing a set

7.2.1 Six equivalent approaches to topologizing a set

The chain of assignments

$$\varepsilon \mapsto \varepsilon \langle \] \mapsto \mathcal{E} := \varepsilon \langle \]_* \mathcal{P}X \quad (476)$$

induces the commutative diagram of canonical identifications

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{equipotence classes} \\ \text{of interior relations} \end{array} \right\} & \longleftrightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{finitely left-exact} \\ \text{operations } \lambda \in \text{Op}_I \mathcal{P}X \\ \text{such that } \lambda^2 = \lambda \subseteq \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}X} \end{array} \right\} & \longleftrightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{topologies} \\ \text{on } X \end{array} \right\} \\
 \uparrow (\cdot)^c & & \uparrow \text{ad}_{\mathbb{C}} & & \uparrow \mathbb{C}_* \\
 \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{equipotence classes} \\ \text{of adherence relations} \end{array} \right\} & \longleftrightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{finitely right-exact} \\ \text{operations } \lambda \in \text{Op}_I \mathcal{P}X \\ \text{such that } \text{id}_{\mathcal{P}X} \subseteq \lambda = \lambda^2 \end{array} \right\} & \longleftrightarrow & \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{finitely sup-closed,} \\ \text{and inf-closed families} \\ \text{of subsets of } X \end{array} \right\},
 \end{array} \tag{477}$$

where $\text{ad}_{\mathbb{C}}$ is the adjoint action of the involution \mathbb{C} , cf. Section 2.2.33. Commutativity of this diagram is a consequence of Exercise 180, formula (462) and Exercise 188.

Elements of any of the six sets appearing in Diagram (477) are the “data” that transform an arbitrary set X into a mathematical structure of a certain type.

To *topologize* a set X is to provide a list of six elements, one in each of the above six sets, that correspond to each other under those canonical correspondences. This is what we should accept as the definition of a topological structure on a set.

7.2.2 Terminology

When a topological structure is fixed, the corresponding elements in those six sets, traversing Diagram (477) clockwise, have the following *interpretation*,

- (a) the relation $x, A \mapsto$ “ x is an interior point of a subset A ”;
- (b) the operation $A \mapsto$ “the interior of A ”;
- (c) the topology;
- (d) the family of all closed subsets;
- (e) the operation $A \mapsto$ “the closure of A ”;
- (f) the relation $x, A \mapsto$ “ x is an adherence point of a subset A ”.

7.2.3 Topological spaces: the standard definition

Any one of the above six types of mathematical structures can be chosen to serve as the definition of a *topological space*. The definition that has long been accepted as *standard* reads:

a set equipped with a topology (X, \mathcal{T}) .

7.2.4 Standard notation

The interior of a subset A of a topological space is usually denoted $\overset{\circ}{A}$ or $\text{Int } A$. The closure of a subset A is denoted either \bar{A} or $\text{Cl } A$.

7.2.5 An alternative approach to topologizing a set

Departing from an ε -relation on a set X , we focused our attention exclusively on the associated operation on the power-set of X . There is an equivalent approach that focuses on the X -indexed family of families of subsets of X ,

$$([x])_{x \in X}, \quad (478)$$

cf. Section (7.1.9).

Exercise 190 Show that, for every ε -relation and every $x \in X$, one has

$$[x]_{(\text{id}_X, \mathbb{C})^* \varepsilon} = \mathbb{C}_* [x]_\varepsilon \quad (479)$$

where \mathbb{C}_* denotes the direct image operation on $\mathcal{P}\mathcal{P}X$ induced by the complement operation on $\mathcal{P}X$.

Exercise 191 Show that, for every ε -relation and every $x \in X$, one has

$$[x]_{\neg \varepsilon} = \mathbb{C} [x]_\varepsilon \quad (480)$$

where \mathbb{C} denotes the complement operation on $\mathcal{P}\mathcal{P}X$.

7.2.6

As a corollary of equalities (479) and (480), we obtain the following lemma.

Lemma 7.4 One has

$$[\]_{(\text{id}_X, \mathbb{C})^* \varepsilon} = \mathbb{C}_* \circ [\]_\varepsilon, \quad [\]_{\neg \varepsilon} = \mathbb{C} \circ [\]_\varepsilon \quad \text{and} \quad [\]_{\varepsilon^c} = \mathbb{C} \circ \mathbb{C}_* \circ [\]_\varepsilon. \quad (481)$$

7.2.7

Note that operations \mathbb{C} and \mathbb{C}_* commute

$$\mathbb{C} \circ \mathbb{C}_* = \mathbb{C}_* \circ \mathbb{C}.$$

7.2.8

The canonical Galois connection, $\langle \rangle, [\]$, cf. Section 6.3.6, translates properties of operation $\langle \rangle$ on $\mathcal{P}X$ into the corresponding properties of the family of families of subsets of X ,

Lemma 7.5 (a) A relation ε is monotonic if and only if each $[x]$ is a right-saturated subset of $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$, cf. Section 6.5.6.

(b) If ε is finitely left exact, then each $[x]$ is a finitely inf-closed subset of $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$.

(c) If ε is monotonic and each $[x]$ is a finitely inf-closed subset of $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$ then ε is finitely left exact.

(d) A relation ε is finitely left exact if and only if each $[x]$ is a filter of subsets of X , cf. Section 6.6.

(e) A relation ε is weaker than \in if and only if each $[x]$ is contained in the principal ultrafilter $\mathcal{P}_x X$, cf. Section 6.7.3.

Proof of (a). Given $x \in X$ and $A, B \subseteq X$, one has the statement

$$x \in \langle A \rangle \Rightarrow x \in \langle B \rangle \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad [x] \ni A \Rightarrow [x] \ni B.$$

It, in turn, implies the statement

$$(A \subseteq B) \Rightarrow (x \in \langle A \rangle \Rightarrow x \in \langle B \rangle) \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad (A \subseteq B) \Rightarrow ([x] \ni A \Rightarrow [x] \ni B).$$

By applying $\forall_{x \in X} \forall_{A, B \subseteq X}$ to each side of the above statement equivalence, and by recalling that changing the order in which universal quantification is applied produces an equivalent statement, we obtain the equivalence of statements

$$\forall_{A, B \subseteq X} A \subseteq B \Rightarrow \langle A \rangle \subseteq \langle B \rangle \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \forall_{x \in X} (\forall_{A, B \subseteq X} A \subseteq B \Rightarrow ([x] \ni A \Rightarrow [x] \ni B)).$$

The left-hand-side is monotonicity of ε , the right-hand-side is right-saturation of each $[x]$ in $(\mathcal{P}X, \subseteq)$.

7.2.9 A comment about proofs

The above argument is constructed to reveal the structure of a formal proof, i.e., a proof acceptable from the standpoint of Mathematical Logic. This structure is always *implicit* in any *logically correct* proof of any statement even though the actual phrasing of the argument usually is more colloquial. The degree of colloquiality of the argument may vary but not the degree of how *rigorous* the argument is.

I suggest that you write down your own, more colloquially phrased, proof of Part (a). You will likely discover that it is natural to split a colloquial proof of equivalence of two statements into separate proofs of *necessity* and *sufficiency* of one of the statements for validity of the other one.

Exercise 192 Prove Part (b).

Exercise 193 Prove Part (c).

Exercise 194 Prove Part (d).

Exercise 195 Prove Part (e).

Lemma 7.6 Assignment

$$\varepsilon \longmapsto ([x]_\varepsilon)_{x \in X} \tag{482}$$

induces a canonical identification

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{equipotence classes} \\ \text{of interior relations} \end{array} \right\} \longleftrightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{families of } \langle \cdot \rangle\text{-invariant filters } (\mathcal{F}_x)_{x \in X} \\ \text{such that } \forall_{x \in X} \mathcal{F}_x \subseteq \mathcal{P}_x X \end{array} \right\}. \tag{483}$$

Exercise 196 Prove Lemma 7.6.

7.2.10 Terminology and notation: points, neighborhoods and the neighborhoods filter of a point

When a topological structure is fixed, elements of the topologized set are referred to as *points*, members of filter $[x]$ are referred to as *neighborhoods of x* , and the family of subsets $[x]$ is referred to as *the neighborhoods filter of point x* , and it will be subsequently denoted \mathcal{N}_x .

In this case, family $[x]_{\varepsilon}$ consists of all subsets of X whose closure contains point x ,

$$[x]_{\varepsilon} = \{A \subseteq X \mid x \in \bar{A}\}$$

as follows from the third equality in (481).

Exercise 197 Describe the neighborhood filters $\mathcal{N}_{(0)}$ and $\mathcal{N}_{(p)}$ of points in $\text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}$, cf. Section 5.7.16.

7.2.11 Pas de sept de la Topologie

The above seven approaches to topologizing a set should never be lost from sight when investigating topological spaces. Arguments are frequently built by graciously moving from one approach to another one, and so on.

7.3 Morphisms

7.3.1 Concrete morphisms between ε -spaces

There are a priori six different candidates for the role of a *concrete* morphism between ε -spaces

$$(X, \varepsilon) \longrightarrow (X', \varepsilon'), \quad (484)$$

i.e., between sets equipped with an ε -relation.

Four of these involve covariant functions between the corresponding power-sets, f_* and $f_!$, and are morphisms of two types from ε to ε' ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow f_* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \end{array} & \text{Statements} \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow f_* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \end{array} \\ \text{Statements} \end{array} \quad (485)$$

and

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow f_! \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \end{array} & \text{Statements} \end{array}, \quad \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow f_! \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \end{array} \\ \text{Statements} \end{array} \quad (486)$$

Two of these involve contravariant function f^* and are bimorphisms of two types from ε to ε' ,

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \\ X, \mathcal{P}X' \\ \downarrow f^* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \text{Statements} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \end{array} & \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \\ X, \mathcal{P}X' \\ \downarrow f^* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \text{Statements} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \end{array} \quad (487)
 \end{array}$$

7.3.2

We shall refer to these six types of concrete morphisms associated with a function f between the underlying sets as being *morphisms between ε -spaces* of type

$$*_\Rightarrow, \quad *_\Leftarrow, \quad !_\Rightarrow, \quad !_\Leftarrow, \quad {}^*\Rightarrow, \quad \text{or} \quad {}^*\Leftarrow.$$

7.3.3 A relation between $*_\Rightarrow$ - and $!_\Leftarrow$ -morphisms

There exists a close relation between $*_\Rightarrow$ - and $!_\Leftarrow$ -morphisms.

Lemma 7.7 For any function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ and any pair of ε -relations on X and X' , one has

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \text{Statements} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \end{array} & \Longleftrightarrow & \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'^c} \\ \text{Statements} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon^c} \end{array} \quad (488)
 \end{array}$$

In other words,

$$f \text{ is a } *_\Rightarrow\text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X', \varepsilon') \iff f \text{ is a } !_\Leftarrow\text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon^c) \rightarrow (X', \varepsilon'^c). \quad (489)$$

Proof. To keep notation simple, let us adopt the following notation

$$\langle \rangle := {}_\varepsilon \langle \rangle, \quad \langle \rangle' := {}_{\varepsilon'} \langle \rangle, \quad \langle \rangle^c := {}_{\varepsilon^c} \langle \rangle, \quad \text{and} \quad \langle \rangle'^c := {}_{\varepsilon'^c} \langle \rangle. \quad (490)$$

Equivalence in the middle of diagram (488) is the composite of a series of equivalences and identi-

fications

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\forall_{x \in X, A \subseteq X} x \varepsilon A \Rightarrow f(x) \varepsilon' f_* A & \iff & \text{the left diagram in (488)} \\
\updownarrow & & \updownarrow \text{ (red)} \\
\forall_{x \in X, A \subseteq X} x \in \langle A \rangle \Rightarrow x \in f^* \langle f_* A \rangle' & & \text{the right diagram in (488)} \\
\updownarrow & & \updownarrow \\
\forall_{A \subseteq X} \langle A \rangle \subseteq f^* \langle f_* A \rangle' & & \forall_{x \in X, B \subseteq X} x \varepsilon^c B \Leftarrow f(x) \varepsilon'^c f! B \\
\updownarrow^{\subseteq} & & \updownarrow \\
\forall_{A \subseteq X} \mathbb{C} \langle \mathbb{C} A \rangle \supseteq \mathbb{C} f^* \langle \mathbb{C} f_* \mathbb{C} A \rangle' & & \forall_{x \in X, B \subseteq X} x \in \langle B \rangle^c \Leftarrow x \in f^* \langle f! B \rangle'^c \\
\updownarrow^{(99)} & & \updownarrow \\
\forall_{B \subseteq X} \mathbb{C} \langle B \rangle \supseteq f^* \mathbb{C} \langle f! B \rangle' & \xlongequal{(462)} & \forall_{B \subseteq X} \langle B \rangle^c \supseteq f^* \langle f! B \rangle'^c
\end{array}$$

□

7.3.4 A relation between $^* \Rightarrow \cdot$ and $^* \Leftarrow \cdot$ -morphisms

There exists a close relation between $^* \Rightarrow \cdot$ and $^* \Leftarrow \cdot$ -morphisms.

Lemma 7.8 For any function $f : X \longrightarrow X'$ and any pair of ε -relations on X and X' , one has

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \parallel \\ X, \mathcal{P}X' \\ \parallel \downarrow f^* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \text{Statements} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} \end{array} & \iff \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \parallel \\ X, \mathcal{P}X' \\ \parallel \downarrow f^* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'^c} \\ \text{Statements} \\ \xleftarrow{\varepsilon^c} \end{array} \quad (491)
\end{array}$$

In other words,

$$f \text{ is a } ^* \Rightarrow \cdot \text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X', \varepsilon') \iff f \text{ is a } ^* \Leftarrow \cdot \text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon^c) \rightarrow (X', \varepsilon'^c). \quad (492)$$

Proof. Equivalence in the middle of diagram (491) is the composite of a series of equivalences

and identifications

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\forall_{x \in X, A' \subseteq X'} x \varepsilon f^* A' \Rightarrow f(x) \varepsilon' A' & \Longleftrightarrow & \text{the left diagram in (491)} \\
\Updownarrow & & \Updownarrow \\
\forall_{x \in X, A' \subseteq X'} x \in \langle f^* A' \rangle \Rightarrow f(x) \in \langle A' \rangle' & & \text{the right diagram in (491)} \\
\Updownarrow & & \Updownarrow \\
\forall_{A' \subseteq X'} \langle f^* A' \rangle \subseteq f^* \langle A' \rangle' & & \forall_{x \in X, B' \subseteq X'} x \varepsilon^c f^* B' \Leftarrow f(x) \varepsilon'^c B' \\
\Updownarrow \subseteq & & \Updownarrow \\
\forall_{A' \subseteq X'} \mathbb{C} \langle f^* \mathbb{C} A' \rangle \supseteq \mathbb{C} f^* \langle \mathbb{C} A' \rangle' & & \forall_{x \in X, B' \subseteq X'} x \in \langle f^* B' \rangle^c \Leftarrow f(x) \in \langle B' \rangle'^c \\
\Updownarrow \mathbb{C} A=B \text{ (104)} & & \Updownarrow \\
\forall_{B' \subseteq X'} \mathbb{C} \langle f^* B' \rangle \supseteq f^* \mathbb{C} \langle B' \rangle' & \stackrel{(462)}{=} & \forall_{B' \subseteq X'} \langle f^* B' \rangle^c \supseteq f^* \langle B' \rangle'^c
\end{array}$$

□

7.3.5 Relations between $\ast \Rightarrow$ -morphisms and $\ast \Rightarrow$ -morphisms

There exist close relations between $\ast \Rightarrow$ -morphisms and $\ast \Rightarrow$ -morphisms as long as either the source or the target ε -relation is *monotonic*.

Lemma 7.9 *If ε' is monotonic, then, for any function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ and any ε , one has*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{ccc} X', \mathcal{P}X' & & \\ \uparrow f & \uparrow f_* & \searrow \varepsilon' \\ X, \mathcal{P}X & & \text{Statements} \\ \uparrow \varepsilon & & \end{array} & \Rightarrow & \begin{array}{ccc} X', \mathcal{P}X' & & \\ \uparrow f & \parallel & \searrow \varepsilon' \\ X, \mathcal{P}X' & & \text{Statements} \\ \parallel \downarrow f_* & & \uparrow \varepsilon \\ X, \mathcal{P}X & & \end{array}
\end{array} \quad (493)$$

In other words, if ε' is monotonic, then

$$f \text{ is a } \ast \Rightarrow \text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon') \implies f \text{ is a } \ast \Rightarrow \text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon'). \quad (494)$$

Proof. Implication in the middle of diagram (493) is the composite of a series of equivalences and of a implications

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{the left diagram in (493)} & \implies & \text{the right diagram in (493)} \\
\Updownarrow & & \Updownarrow \\
\forall_{A \subseteq X} \langle A \rangle \subseteq f^* \langle f_* A \rangle' & & \forall_{A' \subseteq X'} \langle f^* A' \rangle \subseteq f^* \langle A' \rangle' \\
\searrow & \xrightarrow{f_* f^* \subseteq \text{id}_{X'}} & \nearrow \vare' \text{ monotonic} \\
\forall_{A' \subseteq X'} \langle f^* A' \rangle \subseteq f^* \langle f_* f^* A' \rangle' & &
\end{array}$$

□

Lemma 7.10 *If ε is monotonic, then, for any function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ and any ε' , one has*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow f_* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \searrow \varepsilon' \\ \nearrow \varepsilon \end{array} & \text{Statements} \\
 & \text{red curved arrow} &
 \end{array} \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow f_* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \searrow \varepsilon' \\ \nearrow \varepsilon \end{array} & \text{Statements} \\
 & \text{red curved arrow} &
 \end{array}
 \quad (495)$$

In other words, if ε is monotonic, then

$$f \text{ is a } * \Rightarrow \text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon') \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad f \text{ is a } * \Rightarrow \text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon') . \quad (496)$$

Proof. Implication in the middle of diagram (495) is the composite of a series of equivalences and of a implications

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \text{the left diagram in (495)} & \Longleftarrow & \text{the right diagram in (495)} \\
 \updownarrow & & \updownarrow \\
 \forall_{A \subseteq X} \langle A \rangle \subseteq f^* \langle f_* A \rangle' & & \forall_{A' \subseteq X'} \langle f^* A' \rangle \subseteq f^* \langle A' \rangle' \\
 \swarrow \text{id}_X \subseteq f^* f_* \quad \varepsilon \text{ monotonic} & & \searrow \\
 \forall_{A \subseteq X} \langle f^* f_* A \rangle \subseteq f^* \langle f_* A \rangle' & &
 \end{array}$$

□

Corollary 7.11 *If both ε and ε' are monotonic, then*

$$f \text{ is a } * \Rightarrow \text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon') \quad \Longleftrightarrow \quad f \text{ is a } * \Rightarrow \text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon') . \quad (497)$$

□

7.3.6 Relations between $\lrcorner \Leftarrow$ -morphisms and $* \Leftarrow$ -morphisms

In view of the fact that ε' is monotonic precisely when ε is monotonic (cf. Exercise 181), Lemmata 7.9–7.10 and Corollary 7.11 have their analogs also for $\lrcorner \Leftarrow$ -morphisms and $* \Leftarrow$ -morphisms.

Lemma 7.12 *If ε' is monotonic, then, for any function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ and any ε , one has*

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow f_! \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \searrow \varepsilon' \\ \nearrow \varepsilon \end{array} & \text{Statements} \\
 & \text{red curved arrow} &
 \end{array} \quad \Longrightarrow \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \quad \uparrow f_* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \searrow \varepsilon' \\ \nearrow \varepsilon \end{array} & \text{Statements} \\
 & \text{red curved arrow} &
 \end{array}
 \quad (498)$$

In other words, if ε' is monotonic, then

$$f \text{ is a } \lrcorner\text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon') \implies f \text{ is a } *\text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon'). \quad (499)$$

Exercise 198 Prove Lemma 7.12 by closely following the proof of Lemma 7.9.

Exercise 199 Prove Lemma 7.13 by closely following the proof of Lemma 7.10.

Lemma 7.13 If ε is monotonic, then, for any function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ and any ε' , one has

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \searrow \varepsilon \end{array} & \text{Statements} \\ & \text{((red curved arrow))} & \end{array} \iff \begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} X', \mathcal{P}X' \\ \uparrow f \\ X, \mathcal{P}X' \\ \downarrow f^* \\ X, \mathcal{P}X \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'} \\ \searrow \varepsilon \end{array} & \text{Statements} \end{array} \quad (500)$$

In other words, if ε is monotonic, then

$$f \text{ is a } \lrcorner\text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon') \iff f \text{ is a } *\text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon'). \quad (501)$$

Corollary 7.14 If both ε and ε' are monotonic, then

$$f \text{ is a } \lrcorner\text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon') \iff f \text{ is a } *\text{-morphism } (X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon'). \quad (502) \quad \square$$

Corollary 7.15 Let $f : X \rightarrow X'$ be a function and let ε and ε' be monotonic. The following conditions are equivalent.

- (a) f is a $*\Rightarrow$ -morphism $(X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon')$.
- (b) f is a $*\Rightarrow$ -morphism $(X, \varepsilon) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon')$.
- (c) f is a \lrcorner -morphism $(X, \varepsilon^c) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon'^c)$.
- (d) f is a $*\Leftarrow$ -morphism $(X, \varepsilon^c) \rightarrow (X, \varepsilon'^c)$.

□

7.3.7 Morphisms between monotonic ε -spaces

Corollary 7.15 suggests what should serve as a definition of a morphism between monotonic ε -spaces (484). We declare a function $f : X \rightarrow X'$ to be a *morphism* if it satisfies any one of the four equivalent conditions of Lemma 7.15.

7.3.8 Continuous functions as morphisms between adherence ε -spaces

For adherence spaces, the four equivalent conditions of Lemma 7.15, translated into the language of the *closure* and the *interior* operations, read as follows.

$$(a') \quad f_* \circ \text{Cl} \subseteq \text{Cl} \circ f_* \quad .$$

$$(b') \quad \text{Cl} \circ f^* \subseteq f^* \circ \text{Cl} \quad .$$

$$(c') \quad f_i \circ \text{Int} \supseteq \text{Int} \circ f_i \quad .$$

$$(d') \quad \text{Int} \circ f^* \supseteq f^* \circ \text{Int} \quad .$$

Condition (a') is, essentially, the classical definition of a *continuous* function. It says that

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{if } x \in X \text{ is an adherence point of a subset } A \subseteq X, \\ &\text{then } f(x) \text{ is an adherence point of the image } f_*A \subseteq X'. \end{aligned} \quad (503)$$

7.3.9 Adherence is the primary structure in classical approach to Topology

Note that here, in contrast to what Diagram (477) may suggest, $\varepsilon[\]$ is the closure operation, while $\varepsilon^c[\]$ is the interior operation. In other words, the classical approach to Continuity is based on *adherence* as the primary structure of a topologized set, with the interior structure appearing as the *conjugate* of that primary structure.

7.4 Compactology

7.4.1 A subset covered by a family of subsets

Given a subset $E \subseteq X$ and a family of subsets $\mathcal{C} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$, we say that E is *covered* by \mathcal{C} if

$$E \subseteq \bigcup \mathcal{C} . \quad (504)$$

We shall say in this case that \mathcal{C} is a *cover* of E . To be covered is an ε -relation on $\mathcal{P}X$. We shall denote it $E \in \mathcal{C}$ ⁶

7.4.2 \mathcal{A} -compact subsets

Given a family \mathcal{A} of subsets of a set X , we shall say that a subset $K \subseteq X$ is *\mathcal{A} -compact* if, for every cover of K by a family $\mathcal{A}' \subseteq \mathcal{A}$, there exists a *finite* subfamily $\mathcal{A}'' \subseteq \mathcal{A}'$ that covers K .

7.4.3 Principal filter $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{A}}$ on $\mathcal{P}X$

If $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ is a family of subsets of X , then $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{A}}$ denotes the family of all families of subsets that contain \mathcal{A} as their subfamily.

⁶Be aware that symbol $A \in B$ may be used also for the relation *subset A is contained in the interior of subset B* .

7.4.4 Principal filter $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{P}_A}$ on $\mathcal{P}X$

When we apply this to $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{P}_A$, we obtain the family of subsets of X , then $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{P}_A}$ denotes the family of all families of subsets that contain \mathcal{P}_A as their subfamily.

Exercise 200 Show that $\mathcal{P}_{\mathcal{P}_A} = \mathfrak{C}(A)$ where

$$\mathfrak{C}(A) := \{\mathcal{E} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X \mid A \in \mathcal{E}\}. \quad (505)$$

7.4.5 \mathcal{A} -prime filters

Let $\mathcal{A}'' \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ be a *finite* family of subsets.

Exercise 201 Show that

$$\text{Filt } X \cap \bigcap \mathfrak{C}_* \mathcal{A}'' = \text{Filt } X \cap \mathfrak{C} \left(\bigcap \mathcal{A}'' \right) \quad (506)$$

and

$$\text{Filt } X \cap \bigcup \mathfrak{C}_* \mathcal{A}'' \subseteq \text{Filt } X \cap \mathfrak{C} \left(\bigcup \mathcal{A}'' \right). \quad (507)$$

We say that a filter \mathcal{F} is \mathcal{A} -*prime* if, for every finite nonempty family of nonempty subsets $\mathcal{A}'' \subseteq \mathcal{A}$, one has

$$\bigcup \mathcal{A}'' \in \mathcal{F} \Rightarrow \exists_{A \in \mathcal{A}''} A \in \mathcal{F}. \quad (508)$$

We shall denote the set of \mathcal{A} -prime filters on a set X by $\text{Filt}^{\mathcal{A}\text{-prime}} X$.

In the case of $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{P}X$, we talk of *prime* filters.

7.4.6 Functorial properties of prime filters

Suppose that $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ and $\mathcal{B} \subseteq \mathcal{P}Y$. Let $f : (X, \mathcal{A}) \rightarrow (Y, \mathcal{B})$ be a morphism, cf. (239), i.e.,

$$\mathcal{A} \supseteq f_*^* \mathcal{B} \quad (509)$$

or, equivalently,

$$f^{**} \mathcal{A} \supseteq \mathcal{B}. \quad (510)$$

Exercise 202 Show that, if \mathcal{F} is an \mathcal{A} -prime filter, then $f^{**} \mathcal{F}$ is a \mathcal{B} -prime filter.

7.4.7 \mathcal{A} -generated filters

We say that a filter \mathcal{F} is \mathcal{A} -*generated* if $\mathcal{F} \cap \mathcal{A}$ generates \mathcal{F} , i.e., if

$$\forall_{F \in \mathcal{F}} \exists_{A \in \mathcal{F} \cap \mathcal{A}} A \subseteq F. \quad (511)$$

Lemma 7.16 Every maximal $\mathcal{C}_* \mathcal{A}$ -generated filter is \mathcal{A} -prime.

Here $\mathbb{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ is the family of complements of members of \mathcal{A} .

Proof. Let $\mathcal{A}'' \subseteq \mathcal{A}$ be a finite nonempty family of nonempty subsets of X such that

$$\bigcup \mathcal{A}'' \in \mathcal{F}.$$

We shall prove, by induction on the cardinality of \mathcal{A}'' , that there exists $A \in \mathcal{A}''$ such that $A \in \mathcal{F}$.

The assertion is obviously satisfied when \mathcal{A}'' consists of a single member subset. Assume that \mathcal{A}'' has at least two member subsets and let $B \in \mathcal{A}''$ be any member of \mathcal{A}'' . One has

$$B \notin \mathcal{F} \iff \forall_{F \in \mathcal{F}} F \cap \mathbb{C}B \neq \emptyset. \quad (512)$$

By taking into account that $\mathbb{C}B \in \mathbb{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ and \mathcal{F} is $\mathbb{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ -generated, we deduce that $B \notin \mathcal{F}$ if and only if the family

$$\{F \cap \mathbb{C}B \mid F \in \mathcal{F} \cap \mathbb{C}_*\mathcal{A}\} \quad (513)$$

satisfies Finite-Interscction Property, cf. Section 6.7.4. The smallest filter that contains this family is $\mathbb{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ -generated and contains \mathcal{F} . Since \mathcal{F} is a maximal $\mathbb{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ -generated filter, the two filters coincide. In particular,

$$\mathbb{C}B \in \mathcal{F}.$$

Thus, if $B \notin \mathcal{F}$, then

$$\mathcal{F} \ni \mathbb{C}B \cap \bigcup \mathcal{A}'' = \mathbb{C}B \cap (B \cup \bigcup (\mathcal{A}'' \setminus \{B\})) = \mathbb{C}B \cap \bigcup (\mathcal{A}'' \setminus \{B\})$$

and, since

$$\mathbb{C}B \cap \bigcup (\mathcal{A}'' \setminus \{B\}) \subseteq \bigcup \mathcal{A}'' \setminus \{B\},$$

also

$$\mathcal{F} \ni \bigcup \mathcal{A}'' \setminus \{B\}.$$

Family $\mathcal{A}'' \setminus \{B\}$ has fewer number of members than \mathcal{A}'' and therefore, by inductive hypothesis, there exists $A \in \mathcal{A}'' \setminus \{B\}$ such that $A \in \mathcal{F}$. \square

7.4.8

In the special case $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{P}X$, we obtain the following sharper result.

Corollary 7.17 *A filter is prime if and only if it is an ultrafilter.*

Proof. For obvious reasons every filter is $\mathcal{P}X$ -generated and $\mathbb{C}_*\mathcal{P}X = \mathcal{P}X$. It suffices to show that every prime filter is a maximal filter, i.e., an ultrafilter.

Exercise 203 *Show that \mathcal{F} is an ultrafilter if*

$$\forall_{E \in \mathcal{P}X} ((\forall_{F \in \mathcal{F}} E \cap F \neq \emptyset) \iff E \in \mathcal{F}). \quad (514)$$

Exercise 204 *Let \mathcal{F} be an arbitrary filter and $E \subseteq X$. Suppose that*

$$\forall_{F \in \mathcal{F}} E \cap F \neq \emptyset,$$

and, therefore, family $\{E\} \cup \mathcal{F}$ satisfies Finite-Intersection Property. Show that

$$\mathbb{C}E \notin \mathcal{F}.$$

Taking into account that

$$E \cup CE = X \in \mathcal{F}, \quad CE \notin \mathcal{F}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{F} \text{ is prime,}$$

one concludes that $E \in \mathcal{F}$. □

Exercise 205 Show that

$$\forall_{x \in X} \forall_{A \subseteq X} (\mathcal{P}_{\{x\}} \in \mathfrak{C}(A) \Leftrightarrow x \in A). \quad (515)$$

Lemma 7.18 Let $\mathcal{A}'' \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ be a **finite** family of subsets. Then, \mathcal{A}'' covers X if and only if family $\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}''$ covers $\text{Filt}^{\mathcal{A}\text{-prime}}X$. Symbolically,

$$X \in \mathcal{A}'' \Leftrightarrow \text{Filt}^{\mathcal{A}\text{-prime}}X \in \mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}''.$$

□

Exercise 206 Prove that

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{a family } \mathcal{A}' \subseteq \mathcal{P}X \text{ does not admit any} \\ &\text{finite subfamily } \mathcal{A}'' \text{ that covers } X \end{aligned} \Leftrightarrow \mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}' \in \text{FIP}(X). \quad (516)$$

Corollary 7.19 One has

$$\forall_{\mathcal{B} \in \text{FIP}(X)} (\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}' \subseteq \mathcal{B} \Rightarrow \forall_{A \in \mathcal{A}'} \mathcal{B} \notin \mathfrak{C}(A)) \quad (517)$$

and, therefore,

$$\text{FIP}(X) \cap \mathcal{P}_{\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}'} \cap \bigcup \mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}' = \emptyset. \quad (518)$$

It follows that, if no finite subfamily \mathcal{A}'' covers X , then any maximal $\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ -generated filter that contains $\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}'$ does not belong to any $\mathfrak{C}(A)$, ($A \in \mathcal{A}'$). Since each such filter is \mathcal{A} -prime, family $\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ does not cover $\text{Filt}^{\mathcal{A}\text{-prime}}X$.

By combining this with Lemma 7.18, we obtain the following result.

Proposition 7.20 Let $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$ be an arbitrary family of subsets of X . One has

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{a family } \mathcal{A}' \subseteq \mathcal{P}X \text{ admits a finite} \\ &\text{subfamily } \mathcal{A}'' \text{ that covers } X \end{aligned} \Leftrightarrow \text{Filt}^{\mathcal{A}\text{-prime}}X \in \mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}'. \quad (519)$$

□

Corollary 7.21 For any family $\mathcal{A} \subseteq \mathcal{P}X$, the set of \mathcal{A} -prime filters is $\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ -compact. □

7.5 Compactification of a topological space ($\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{T}$ and $\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{F}$)

7.5.1 A canonical embedding $X \hookrightarrow \text{Filt } X$

Assignment

$$x \mapsto \mathcal{P}_{\{x\}} \quad (520)$$

defines a canonical embedding of X into the set of filters on X , whose image is contained in the $\mathfrak{C}_*\mathcal{A}$ -compact set $\text{Filt}^{\mathcal{A}\text{-prime}}X$.

7.5.2

If \mathcal{A} is finitely inf-closed, i.e., closed under formation of finite intersections, then, according to Identity (506), also family $\mathfrak{E}_*\mathcal{A}$ is finitely inf-closed and assignment

$$A \mapsto \mathfrak{E}(A) \quad (A \in \mathcal{A}) \quad (521)$$

is a homomorphism of the monoids

$$(\mathcal{A}, X, \cap) \longrightarrow (\mathfrak{E}_*\mathcal{A}, \text{Filt } X, \cap). \quad (522)$$

7.5.3

Any family \mathcal{B} of subsets of any set X that is closed under finite intersections is a base of a topology \mathcal{T} . That topology is the sup-closure \mathcal{B}^\cup of \mathcal{B} .

7.5.4 \mathcal{B} -compactness $\Leftrightarrow \mathcal{T}$ -compactness

Exercise 207 If \mathcal{B} is a base of a topology \mathcal{T} , then \mathcal{B} -compactness and \mathcal{T} -compactness are equivalent.

7.5.5

Intersection of open subset $\mathfrak{E}(U)$ of $\text{Filt } X$ with the image of Canonical Embedding (520),

$$\{\mathcal{P}_{\{x\}} \mid \mathcal{P}_{\{x\}} \in \mathfrak{E}(U)\} = \{\mathcal{P}_{\{x\}} \mid U \in \mathcal{P}_{\{x\}}\} = \{\mathcal{P}_{\{x\}} \mid x \in U\}, \quad (523)$$

coincides with the image of open subset $U \subseteq X$ proving at once that Canonical Embedding identifies a topological space (X, \mathcal{T}) with a dense subspace of $(\text{Filt } X, (\mathfrak{E}_*\mathcal{T})^\cup)$.

7.5.6 A distinguished fundamental system of open neighborhoods of $\mathcal{F} \in \text{Filt } X$

The family

$$\{\mathfrak{E}(U) \mid \mathcal{F} \in \mathfrak{E}(U)\} = \{\mathfrak{E}(U) \mid U \in \mathcal{F}\} \quad (524)$$

is a fundamental system of open neighborhoods of a point $\mathcal{F} \in \text{Filt } X$.

7.5.7 A distinguished fundamental system of neighborhoods of $\mathcal{P}_{\{x\}} \in \text{Filt } X$

By (524), principal filter $\mathcal{P}_{\{x\}}$ has as its fundamental of neighbourhoods,

$$\{\mathfrak{E}(U) \mid U \in \mathcal{P}_{\{x\}}\} = \{\mathfrak{E}(U) \mid x \in U\} = \mathfrak{E}_*(\mathcal{N}_x \cap \mathcal{T}), \quad (525)$$

the direct image under \mathfrak{E} of the fundamental system of all open neighborhoods of x in (X, \mathcal{T}) .

We established the following fact.

Theorem 7.22 (Compactification Theorem) Canonical Embedding (520) identifies an arbitrary topological space (X, \mathcal{T}) with a dense subspace of $(\text{Filt } X, (\mathfrak{E}_*\mathcal{T})^\cup)$. That subspace is contained in the compact subset of maximal \mathcal{T} -prime filters

$$\text{Filt}^{\mathcal{T}\text{-prime}} X \subseteq \text{Filt } X.$$

□

7.5.8 A canonical embedding $X \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Filt}^{\mathcal{T}\text{-prime}} X$

The intermediate embedding of (X, \mathcal{T}) onto a dense subset of compact set $\mathbf{Filt}^{\mathcal{T}\text{-prime}} X$, equipped with the topology induced from $(\mathbf{Filt} X, (\mathfrak{C}_* \mathcal{T})^\cup)$, is referred to as a *compactification* of (X, \mathcal{T}) .